

ISSN 2221-2698

электронный научный журнал  
**«Арктика и Север»**



ФГАОУ ВПО «Северный (Арктический)  
федеральный университет  
имени М.В.Ломоносова»



Редакция электронного научного журнала  
**«Арктика и Север»**

Arkhangelsk

DOI 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23

**Арктика и Север / Arctic and North. 2016. № 23**

© Северный (Арктический) федеральный университет имени М. В. Ломоносова, 2016

© Редакция электронного научного журнала «Арктика и Север», 2016

Журнал «Арктика и Север» зарегистрирован в Роскомнадзоре как электронное периодическое издание на русском и английском языках, свидетельство Эл № ФС77-42809 от 26 ноября 2010 г.; в Научной электронной библиотеке eLIBRARY, РИНЦ, лицензионный договор № 96-04/2011R от 12 апреля 2011 г.; в базах данных: Directory of Open Access Journals — DOAJ (2013); Global Serials Directory Ulrichsweb, США (2013); NSD, Норвегия (2015); InfoBase Index, Индия (2015). Выходит в свет не менее 4 выпусков в год.

Учредитель — ФГАОУ ВПО «Северный (Арктический) федеральный университет имени М.В. Ломоносова». Главный редактор — Лукин Юрий Федорович, доктор исторических наук, профессор. Все номера журнала находятся в свободном доступе в Интернете на русском и английском языках. Правила направления, рецензирования и опубликования научных статей, декларация об этике опубликованы на сайте: <http://narfu.ru/aan/rules/>

Журнал публикует статьи, в которых объектом исследования являются Арктика и Север, по: 08.00.00 Экономические науки. 22.00.00 Социологические науки. 23.00.00 Политология. Плата с авторов, в том числе с аспирантов и студентов, за публикацию статей не взимается. Гонорары не выплачиваются. Все рукописи рецензируются. Редакция рассматривает факт направления и получения авторских рукописей как передачу авторами своих прав на публикацию в журнале «Арктика и Север» и размещение в базах данных, включая РИНЦ, DOAJ и другие, что способствует продвижению публикационной активности авторов и отвечает их интересам.

The journal “Arctic and North” is registered at Roskomnadzor as an internet periodical issued in Russian and English, Registration certificate El № FS77-42809, November 26, 2010; at the system of the Russian Science Citation Index (RSCI), license contract № 96-04/2011R, April 12, 2011; at the catalogs of international databases: Directory of Open Access Journals — DOAJ (2013); Global Serials Directory Ulrichsweb, USA (2013); NSD, Norway (2015); InfoBase Index, India (2015). The Journal is issued not less than 4 times per year.

The Founder — Northern (Arctic) Federal University named after M.V. Lomonosov. Editor-in-Chief — Yury Fedorovich Lukin, Doctor of Historical Sciences, Professor, Honorary Worker of the higher education of the Russian Federation. All journal issues are available free of charge in Russian and English. Rules and regulations on submission, peer reviews, publication and the Declaration of Ethics are available at: <http://narfu.ru/aan/rules/>

The Journal is devoted to the scientific articles focused on the Arctic and the North relevant for the following professional degrees: 08.00.00 Economics; 22.00.00 Social science; 23.00.00 Political science. No payments for publication are collected from authors, including students and post-graduate students. Honorariums are not paid. All manuscripts are reviewed. The Editorial Board considers receiving of the manuscripts as an authors’ transfer of rights to be published in “Arctic and North” and be placed in the databases, including RSCI and DOAJ that assists and promote the publishing activity of the authors and is in author’s interests.

Our English webpage is located at: <http://narfu.ru/en/research/journals/ann/>

We will be glad to see you among the authors of “Arctic and North”!

## Содержание. Contents

### ЭКОНОМИКА, ПОЛИТИКА, СОЦИУМ И КУЛЬТУРА ECONOMICS, POLITICAL SCIENCE, SOCIETY AND CULTURE

<b>Журавель В.П.</b> Россия в Арктике. Будет ли Госкомиссия её рулевым? <b>Valeriy P. Zhuravel.</b> Russia in the Arctic. Will the State Commission be its helmsman?	5
<b>Коптяева А.А.</b> Международный имидж государства как инструмент мягкой силы <b>Anna A. Koptyaeva</b> The international image of the state as an instrument of soft power	15
<b>Пегин Н.А.</b> Национальная арктическая транспортная линия: проблемы и перспективы <b>Nikolay A. Pegin</b> National Arctic Transport Line: problems and prospects	28
<b>Плисецкий Е.Е.</b> Какие проблемы представители местной власти и жители посёлка Березово Ханты-Мансийского автономного округа — Югры считают самыми главными <b>Evgeny E. Plisetsky</b> What problems the people of the Berezovo village of the Khanty-Mansiisky Autonomous District – Yugra consider the major	35
<b>Цветков А.Ю.</b> Миссия в стратегическом управлении территорией (на примере Соловецкого архипелага) <b>Alexander Y. Tsvetkov</b> Mission in the strategic territory management (on the example of the Solovetsky Archipelago)	44

### АРКТИЧЕСКИЙ ТУРИЗМ В РОССИИ ARCTIC TOURISM IN RUSSIA

<b>Бызова Н.М.</b> Природный туристский потенциал островов западного сектора Российской Арктики <b>Natalia M. Byzova</b> The natural tourist potential of the islands in the western sector of the Russian Arctic	50
<b>Голубева Е. И., Тульская Н. И., Цекина М.В., Кирашева Н. И.</b> Экологический туризм на ООПТ в Российской Арктике: перспективы и проблемы <b>Elena I. Golubeva, Nadezhda I. Tulskaaya, Maria V. Tsekina, Natalia I. Kirasheva</b> Ecological tourism in protected natural areas of the Russian Arctic: prospects and challenges	55
<b>Кузнецов В.С.</b> Комплексный подход к развитию туризма на особо охраняемых природных территориях <b>Victor S. Kuznetsov</b> An integrated approach to tourism development in protected natural areas	65
<b>Лукин Ю.Ф.</b> Арктический туризм: рейтинг регионов, возможности и угрозы <b>Yury F. Lukin</b> Arctic tourism: the rating of regions, the opportunities and threats	77
<b>Харлампьева Н.К.</b> Теоретико-методологическое обоснование развития туризма в Арктике <b>Nadezhda K. Kharlampieva</b> Theory and methodology of the Arctic tourism development	101

## СОХРАНЕНИЕ КУЛЬТУРНОЙ И ПРИРОДНОЙ СРЕДЫ АРКТИКИ PROTECTING CULTURAL AND NATURAL ENVIRONMENT OF THE ARCTIC

<b>Обоимов А.П.</b> Заветная мечта Федора Конюхова <b>Alexander P. Oboimov</b> Fedor Konyukhov's dream	106
---	-----

### ОБЗОРЫ. REVIEWS

<b>Зайков К.С., Калинина М.Р., Тамицкий А.М., Сабуров А.А., Шепелев Е.А.</b> Научно-образовательное пространство Арктики: Норвегия <b>Konstantin S. Zaikov, Marina R. Kalinina, Aleksander M. Tamitskiy, Aleksander A. Saburov, Evgeny A. Shepelev.</b> Scientific and educational space of the Arctic: Norway	120
<b>Лукин Ю.Ф.</b> Российская Арктика или Арктическая зона <b>Yury F. Lukin</b> Russian Arctic or the Arctic zone	143
<b>4-е заседание</b> Арктического экспертного клуба САФУ имени М.В. Ломоносова <b>4<sup>th</sup> meeting</b> of the Arctic Expert Club of NArFU named after M.V. Lomonosov	158

### РЕЗЮМЕ. SUMMARY

Авторы, аннотации, ключевые слова / Authors, abstracts, keywords	164
Редакционный совет журнала «Арктика и Север» / Editorial board of "Arctic and North" journal	169
Выходные данные / Output data	171

## ECONOMICS, POLITICAL SCIENCE, SOCIETY AND CULTURE

UDC 342.58

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.5

### Russia in the Arctic. Will the State Commission be its helmsman?



© Valeriy P. Zhuravel, Candidate of Pedagogical Sciences, Associate Professor, Senior Research Fellow, Center of Northern Europe, RAS Institute of Europe. E-mail: zhvalery@mail.ru

**Abstract.** The article is focused on the analysis of the decisions on the development and exploration of the Arctic. It also reveals the activity of the State Commission on the Development of the Arctic. It notes the slow solution of problems of energy, information, transportation security of the remote settlements in the

Russian Arctic. Unresolved issues of legal support of the guarantee and compensation system caused a certain degree of concern for persons working on the territory of the North in the Arctic. This list of existing problems could be extended. Activities of the State Commission confirm the thesis that Russia intends to provide reliable and long-term national interests in the Arctic.

**Keywords:** *Arctic, the development, the State Commission, the problems*

The continuity of the soviet and Russian policy in the Arctic remains a hot topic. After the collapse of the Soviet Union in the context of the new geopolitical situation in the world, Russia has begun to formulate a new Arctic policy, because in the 1980s the Soviet experience was mostly lost. This article examines decisions on the development of the Arctic, and policy implementation.

#### ***Decisions on the development and exploration of the Arctic***

In 1992, an inter-ministerial Commission for the Arctic and Antarctic Affairs was established, which replaced the RSFSR State Commission on Arctic and Antarctic Affairs. In 1996, there was an approved program of development of hydrocarbon reserves on the shelf of the Arctic seas of Russia until 2010. Russia ratified the Convention on the law of the Sea 1982 in December 2001 to increase the limits of its continental shelf of Russia but failed. The Commission considered the evidence provided by the Russian side concerning the Lomonosov Ridge unconvincing when identifying its structure as an undersea continuation of the continental shelf.

However, this did not reduce attention to the country's leadership in the Arctic and its problems. September 18, 2008: the President of the Russian Federation approved the framework of the State policy of the Russian Federation in the Arctic for the period up to the year 2020 and beyond, which identified the objectives and strategic priorities of the State policy of Russia in the

Arctic. In order to carry out the tasks defined in this document, according to experts, the state should begin more productive phase in the exploration and development of the Arctic. During the preparation and adoption of the document, a significant contribution to the security of the Russian Federation has been made. In Arkhangelsk, Northern (Arctic) Federal University<sup>1</sup> was established to train specialists for the Arctic areas.

On the 8<sup>th</sup> of February 2013 the President of Russia approved "Arctic development strategy of the Russian Federation and national security for the period up to the year 2020". The Russian Government Decree No. 366, 21.04.2014 approved the "State programme of socio-economic development of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation for the period until the year 2020". In 2014, in accordance with the Decree of the President of the Russian Federation from May 2, 2014 No. 296 "On land territories of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation" the state authorities identified subjects of the Russian Federation and municipal entities included in the Arctic zone of Russia: a) the four subjects of the Russian Federation (Murmansk region, Yamalo-Nenets, Nenets and Chukotka Autonomous Okrugs); b) some territories of the four subjects of the Russian Federation: Republic of Sakha (Yakutia) (five municipal districts), Krasnoyarsk Krai (3 municipalities), Arkhangelsk Oblast (seven municipalities), Komi Republic (one municipality).

After that, the composition of the Arctic also became an object of state statistical observations. The all-Russia classification of regions has a separate section "Land territory of the Arctic zone". Decree of the RF Government signed on the 3<sup>rd</sup> of December 3, No. 2437-r: A federal plan of statistics is supplemented by subsection 2.5. "Indicators of socio-economic development of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation and national security". July 26, 2015: Russian President V.V. Putin approved the "Maritime doctrine of the Russian Federation", which defines the tasks for the Arctic regional policy. These documents constitute state strategic planning, management and regulation of the socio-economic development and national security issues in the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation (AZRF).

With the adoption of a special law on the Arctic, pinning the special status of the macro-region, it could be argued, that Russia has a full legislative framework managing the relations in this region of the country. The Institute of legislation and comparative law of the Government of the Russian Federation ends "inventory" of all legal acts relating to the Arctic. According to its Director, Vice-President of the RAS T.Habrieva, now we have more than 500 different normative legal acts. Adoption of a federal law "On the development of the Arctic" could be a basis for local

---

<sup>1</sup> The Government of the Russian Federation Order on the 2<sup>nd</sup> of April 2010: NArFu was established on the basis of the Pomor State University and Arkhangelsk Technical University

legal. Therefore, there would be no place for legal disorder in Russia [1]. The legislators agree that Russia needs a new uniform act on the Arctic. The Chairman of the Expert Council on Arctic and Antarctic under the State Council, V.A. Shtyrov emphasizes that “the State programme of socio-economic development of AZRF for the period till the year 2020” is an intermediate option, because it does not meet the objectives laid down in the strategy for the development of AZRF. The first thing you need to do is to modify or change the State program; the next step is creating powerful tools — the special laws on the Arctic, composed of several sections. *Firstly*, it is the economic component: the Arctic must become attractive to investors. Hence, there should be a special tax, fiscal and tariff policies, creating special conditions for the formation of the territory of advanced development, as it has been done on the Far East. *Secondly*, there must be a powerful block of social conditions for the consolidation of the people in the northern regions<sup>1</sup>. Therefore, people would not leave northern regions. There is a need in serious incentives related to salary, provision of housing, increased size of the parent capital, etc. According to experts, there would be other options when people come to the Arctic for short time.

The Deputy Minister of Economic Development and Trade of the Russian Federation A. V. Tsibulskiy thinks that the law should be a document that combines public administration system; special legal regimes involving economic or other activity in the Arctic; state support measures to stimulate such activity; promising mechanisms of public-private partnership; sectoral, regional and local peculiarities of legal regulation of the development of the Arctic territories and waters [2].

In the past two or three years, Russia is stepping up its presence in the Arctic. It is strengthening its position in the Arctic. The Russian Ministry of Defense, the EMERCOM and FSB of Russia established and began operate new military structure of the Joint Strategic Command “North” since December 1, 2014. Armed forces constitute a permanent base for the northern fleet at Novosibirsk Islands. “Spetsstroy Rossii” completed reconstruction of the military base of the first Arctic motorized rifle brigade in the settlement of Alakurtti, Murmansk Region. Work on the construction of facilities on the islands of Kotelnikov, Wrangel, Alexandra Land, Novaya Zemlya and Cape Schmidt is underway; the restoration of the airfields on Novosibirsk Islands and Franz Josef Land is planned and airfields in Tiksi, Naryan-Mar, Alykel, Vorkuta, Anadyr, and Rogachevo is completed. 13 airfields, 1 ground aviation polygon and 10 radar offices and air control points are to be built in the Arctic<sup>2</sup>. October 22, 2015: Russian Minister of Defense Sergey Shoygu said that

---

<sup>1</sup> V zakone ob Arktike dolzhen byt sformirovan moshhnyj socialnyj blok. URL: [http://www.arctic-info.ru/ExpertOpinion/18-09-2015/v-zakone-ob-arktike-doljen-bit\\_-sformirovan-mosnii-social\\_nii-blok](http://www.arctic-info.ru/ExpertOpinion/18-09-2015/v-zakone-ob-arktike-doljen-bit_-sformirovan-mosnii-social_nii-blok) (Accessed: 25 March 2016)

<sup>2</sup> According to information agency «Arktika info» in 2014—2015.

creating the Arctic group of forces of Russia will be completed by 2018, and in 2016—2017 six airfields in the Arctic will be renovated<sup>1</sup>. In order to complete a system for the comprehensive security of population and territories in the Russian Arctic, it is expected to open 10 complex emergency rescue centers of the EMERCOM of Russia with 16 thousand people working there. For the area of 20 000 km it is insufficient, taking into consideration that each year in the Arctic, according to the EMERCOM, we get up to 120 emergencies.

All sorts of accusations against Russia in the militarization of the Arctic are groundless. Deployment of military infrastructure in the Arctic is performed to protect the national interests of Russia, contributes to maintaining the balance of power in the region and counter together with law enforcement agencies and special services of the new challenges and threats to security<sup>2</sup>. Despite the fact that in 2014 all military contacts within the framework of the Arctic Council were stopped, Russia acts in favour of the preservation of the Arctic as a territory of peace, security and international cooperation. The objective of the activity is mostly oil and gas industry, protection of the deposits, functioning of the Northern sea route, and it could be carried out by private military companies, says the Deputy of the State Duma Gennady Nosovko<sup>3</sup>.

Significantly enhanced is attention to search, exploration and production of hydrocarbon resources. Today we have 594 oil deposits, 179 gas deposits, two deposits of nickel and more than 350 gold deposits [3]. In addition, we have large deposits of ferrous, non-ferrous, rare metals, polymetals, radioactive elements, diamonds, non-metallic and chemical raw materials. Minerals remain the key driver for the development of the Arctic macroregion.

In early August 2015, Russia filed an application to the UN Commission on the limits of the continental shelf. Its approval will secure our country's sovereign rights over additional territory on the continental shelf in the Arctic Ocean with an area of 1 200 million sq. km, a huge area rich with hydrocarbons [4]. The decision on this matter will be based on the Ilulissat Declaration, signed by the Ministers for Foreign Affairs of countries — participants of the Arctic Council in 2008, according to which all disputes arising when applying for the definition of the boundaries of

---

<sup>1</sup> Shojgu: Arkticheskaya gruppировka vojsk budet sformirovana k 2018 g. URL: <http://www.arctic-info.ru/news/22-10-2015/soigy--arkticeskaa-gryppirovka-voisk-bydet-sformirovana-k-2018-gody> (Accessed: 24 March 2016)

<sup>2</sup> On May 11, 2015 a session of Federal operating headquarters was held, and decisions were made regarding finding new measures for security and counter-terrorist defence of objects in the sea areas of the Russian Federation, including the Arctic, and regarding better effectiveness of cooperation between authorities while facing terrorist threats. See: V Moskve proshlo zasedanie Federalnogo operativnogo shtaba. URL: <http://nac.gov.ru/nakmessage/2015/05/13/v-moskve-proshlozase-danie-federal-nogo-operativnogo-shtaba.html> (Accessed: 25 March 2016)

<sup>3</sup> Raskin A. Pravitelstvo otkazalos ot sozdaniya chastnyh armij // Izvestiya. 2015. 23 sentyabrya.

the Arctic shelf, will be resolved through negotiations and through the search for consensus. The application is scheduled for February 2016<sup>1</sup>.

In contemporary political conditions, the West systematically uses the environmental problems caused by the mistakes of the past and some bugs today, as a pretext for creating reputational challenges for Russia. In particular, it could be directed against an application to expand the Russian continental shelf. Our State pays attention to the implementation of environmental programmes in the field of biodiversity in the Russian Arctic. It operates 24 specially protected natural areas, 10 nature reserves, 13 parks and 11 federal reserves with a total area of 22.5 mln ha, as well as 86 protected areas of regional importance (29 million ha) [3].

### ***The State Commission for the development of the Arctic***

Recently experts and officials have keenly discussed governance in the Arctic. The discussion emerged three terms: to create a new Arctic Federal District, the Arctic Ministry of the Russian Federation, the establishment of a Government Commission on Arctic Affairs. In February 2015, the State Commission on the development of the Arctic was established. The Chairman of the Commission — Deputy Prime Minister of the Russian Federation D. Rogozin. The Commission includes 79 officials. April 14, 2015: they held its first meeting, started working groups and scientific and expert council. Now we can say that the Commission has been justified, and a number of objective factors has caused it:

1. A significant increase in the role of the Arctic in socio-economic development of the country in recent years. 43% of the Arctic area is Russian. The Russian Arctic is home to more than 2.5 million people, accounting for 2% of the population and more than half of the population of the entire Arctic<sup>2</sup> in the assessment of the United States Geological Survey. The Arctic is 30% of the undiscovered gas reserves, 13% of the undiscovered oil, 30% of the world freshwater. Arctic becomes the center of the intersection of national interests of the Arctic and non-Arctic States.

2. The need to improve coordination of the activities of the federal bodies of executive power. The Arctic issues meet about 20 ministries. Some order is also needed for the development of the Northern sea route (NSR) that will lead to fundamental shifts in world trade and redistribution of global cargo traffic.

---

<sup>1</sup> Donskoj: rassmotrenie zayavki RF na rasshirenie shelfa v Arktike zaplanirovano na fevral. URL: [http://www.arctic-info.ru/news/25-12-2015/donskoi--rassmotrenie-zaavki-rf-na-rasshirenie-sel\\_fa-v-arktike-zaplanirovano-na-fevral\\_](http://www.arctic-info.ru/news/25-12-2015/donskoi--rassmotrenie-zaavki-rf-na-rasshirenie-sel_fa-v-arktike-zaplanirovano-na-fevral_) (Accessed: 25 March 2016)

<sup>2</sup> In 2012 4.6 mln people lived in the Arctic, out of which 2.5 mln lived in AZRF.

3. Growing influence of local governmental bodies within the AZRF. High taxes derived from hydrocarbon production, led to different living standards of the population; disparities in the development of regions; projects are not always timely, economically necessary and justified.

4. Growing influence and the tightening of competition between the major economic entities engaged in exploration and production of hydrocarbons in the Arctic region.

5. The need to strengthen the monitoring of funds allocated to address challenges in the Russian Arctic, including the clean up of the former economic activity.

6. The need for a set of objectives for the development of the International Arctic cooperation, and ensuring state and public security in AZRF.

Implementation of these statements gradually eliminates blurring of responsibility for implementation of the State policy of the Russian Federation in the Arctic. There is an understanding that the country should form a single competence center, able to coordinate the activities of federal executive authorities and bodies of governmental power of RF subjects, other organizations and companies involved in the Arctic policy issues. The State Commission on the Arctic development will face a number of important tasks. *First*, it is a support of indigenous people of the North, Siberia and the Far East: an analysis of law enforcement in the area of their traditional land use, traditional way of life; accounting their interest in management decisions on development of the Arctic territories; introducing a mechanism of compensation for damage. Amount of federal funds provided to the regions to support economic and social development of indigenous peoples reduced from 600 mln rubles in 2009 to 205 mln in 2015<sup>1</sup>. Today 28 subjects of the Russian Federation are home to 42 indigenous peoples of the North, Siberia and the Far East or 258 thousand people<sup>2</sup>. *Secondly*, it is the further development of International Arctic cooperation with states – members of the AC and observers. The particularity of the situation is that Russia “has consistently advocated the strengthening of cooperation with the States - members of the Arctic Council in all directions”<sup>3</sup>. However, the sanctions against our country influence the imbalance in collaboration between the major Arctic players and could adversely affect the performance of the two-year Presidency of the United States in the Arctic Council. Introduced sanctions restricting the time of

<sup>1</sup> D.O. Rogozin: neobhodima kompleksnaya informacionnaya podderzhka interesov Rossii v Arktike. URL: <http://www.arctic-info.ru/news/05-10-2015/dmitrii-rogozin--neobhodima-kompleksnaa-informacionnaa-podderjka-interesov-rossii-v-arktike> (Accessed: 24 March 2016)

<sup>2</sup> Zalog uspeshnogo osvoeniya Arktiki: razvivaya ne navredi. Intervyu prezidenta Associaciya malochislennyx narodov Severa, Sibiri i Dalnego Vostoka RF, deputata Gosudarstvennoj Dumy Federal'nogo Sobraniya Rossijskoj Federacii G.P. Ledkova //Arkticheskoe obozrenie. 2015. № 1. S. 22

<sup>3</sup> Privetstvie Prezidenta Rossijskoj Federacii V.V. Putina uchastnikam i gostyam mezhdunarodnoj vstrechi predstavitelej gosudarstv-chlenov Arkticheskogo soveta, stran-nablyudatelej i zarubezhnoj nauchnoj Arkticheskogo soveta, stran-nablyudatelej i zarubezhnoj nauchnoj obshhestvennosti v Arhangelske 16 sentyabrya 2015g. URL: <http://www.scrf.gov.ru/news/950.html> (Accessed: 12 March 2016)

realization of strategic projects, exploration and production of hydrocarbons in Arctic Russia, pose threats and risks for leading Russian companies. As the analysis shows, targeting sanctions demonstrate a real competition between the states in the region for its resources. In our view, the United States and European countries are not interested in strengthening the position of our country in the Arctic region. They lead and manage this policy even if their company will incur losses and withdraw from the Arctic projects in Russia. In these circumstances, it is important to create their own competitive technologies to reduce dependence on other countries in the future.

*Thirdly*, continuation of work on clean up of the Russian Arctic, including the numerous radioactive waste. It should be noted that on November 24, 2015 this question was considered at the meeting of the RAS Presidium. Despite the fact that in the areas of flooding of radioactive waste and spent nuclear fuel the level of radioactive contamination of gamma-emitting radionuclides is low and does not differ from baseline values, we should not be limited to periodic studies but continue research and observation. The Russian strategy for further development of the Arctic makes the environmental and radiological safety particular important. Now, according to the RAS experts one unresolved problem is flooded nuclear facilities. In the Arctic waters of the USSR/Russia there are approximately 18 thousand of flooded nuclear objects. Today 119 of 121 nuclear submarines (NPS) are utilized in the Arctic. We also solved the problem of dismantling and disposing of the radioisotope thermo-electric generators used in our country since 1970-ies. A special attention is paid to rescue sunken nuclear submarines, as they were not prepared for the flooding and have no additional protective barriers. Submarine “Komsomolets” has two torpedoes with nuclear warheads in addition to the reactor, but they are at a depth of 1.5 kilometer in the Norwegian Sea. According to experts of the Russian Academy of Sciences, it is too expensive to put them up. Therefore, this submarine is not considered a priority utilization facility. The real danger are the two objects: the submarine k-27, located at a depth of 33 meters east of Novaya Zemlya in the Bay of Stepovogo and the submarine K-159, sunken in the Barents sea off the North coast of the Kola Peninsula at a depth of 170 meters. This submarine is under the waters used for intensive maritime communications. Therefore, the calculation of intensity and rate of corrosion of its protective barriers is an extremely important issue. A. Sarkisov believes that it is necessary to carry out additional special research and to build universal lifting platform for such work. According to A. Sarkisov, Russian Academy of Sciences should address the Government of the Russian Federation a number of proposals to solve this problem<sup>1</sup>. After that, in our view, *it is necessary to present*

---

<sup>1</sup> Prezidium RAN: ochistit Arktiku ot posledstvij «holodnoj vojny». URL: <http://scientificrussia.ru/articles/prezidium-ran-ot-24-11-2015> (Accessed: 24 March 2016)

*an integrated programme of clearing the water areas with radioactive waste*, thus eliminate the soil for speculation and attacks on Russian inability to ensure environmental security in the Arctic.

*Fourthly*, sustainable development of the Northern Sea Route; increasing volumes of cargo transportation and integrating it into the world transport system. It must be assumed that the main source of growing the traffic on the NSR is the development of mineral resources of the shelf and the coasts of Barents, Pechora and Kara Seas, Yamal LNG project in particular. According to some scholars, the issue deserves a special attention in the framework of the maritime policy of the Russian fleet to transport petroleum and LNG [5]. Traffic at the NSR grows every year, but today it is not enough for significant transit. Throughout the Northern Sea Route, there is a need to create a sustainable system of navigation and pilotage using the capabilities of space technology at the northern latitudes. In public administration and public opinion, there is an understanding and expectation that the successful development of NSR would contribute to the economic rise of Russia.

At the second meeting in Sochi the Commission set the task of strengthening the work to promote and protect Russian Arctic interests in the media, as well as the development of Arctic tourism. Our media has some printed publications and electronic resources on Arctic issues; they systematically publish materials concerning the Arctic and its environment<sup>1</sup>. With regard to Arctic tourism, it should be recognized that the Russian market is dominated by foreign tour operators. In this regard, it is necessary to create a major national tour operator focused primarily on the internal tourism to attract the Russian citizens and foreigners to the Arctic. However, for this purpose it is necessary to create the appropriate conditions and infrastructure.

November 23, 2015 in the Council of Federation held a joint session of the State Commission for the development of the Arctic and Council on the Arctic and Antarctic issues in the Federation Council. At the meeting, they discussed the draft federal law on the development of the AZRF. A proposal was made to establish a working group to finalize the bill for the autumn session, 2016. In the opinion of the participants of the meeting, organizational, financial and legal mechanisms should enhance the investment attractiveness of the macro-region and make the Arctic more accessible.

---

<sup>1</sup> They are: «Arkticheskie vedomosti», «Arktika; ekologiya i ekonomika», «Arktika i Sever», sajty «Arktika-info» (<http://arctic-info.ru>), «Vremya Arktiki» (<http://arctictime.ru>). Publications about the Arctic are present at web-sites of AZRF regions, Northern (Arctic) Federal University named after M.V. Lomonosov, Arctic and Antarctic scientific research institute, Kolskiy Scientific Centre of the RAS, Russian Council for International Affairs, Russian Centre for Development of the Arctic, Russian Geographical Society.

We will be objective when saying that Arctic key problems are solved too slowly and ineffectively. This is well understood by those, who lives and works there. The region is characterized by out-migration, a high degree of wear and tear of fixed assets, weak infrastructure. The issues of sustainable socio-economic development of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation require decision. The energy problems, information, transport security of the remote areas of the Russian Arctic are slowly decided. Attention is drawn to the aging of the icebreaker and river fleet, an acute shortage of small aviation. Legal provision of the safeguards system and compensation for persons employed in the territory of the North are unclear. Not clear is the support of entrepreneurial activities in the Arctic region. The area requires a significant build-up of forces and means to intensify monitoring of climate change and the state of soils. The list of existing problems could be continued, but you must understand the complexity and heterogeneity of the Russian Arctic. Each region, municipality has its challenges, problems and priorities. In these circumstances, it is important to advance the development of transport infrastructure, which will integrate the subjects of the Russian Federation into a single transportation system and the common economic space. Lately the members of the State Commission for the development of the Arctic and many experts not only opened and thoroughly analyzed all existing problems, but also suggested ways to address them<sup>1</sup>.

### **Conclusion**

Despite all the current complex and controversial political events, the Arctic is noted a **promising territory** by the Chairman of the State Commission D. Rogozin. We see that, for example, projects in Yamalo-Nenets autonomous district, such as the Yamal LNG port Sabetta, would become a reality, the pride of Russia, they require not only a high level of organization, but a lot of attention to the human forces and confidence in their implementation.

In September 2016, Arctic Council is going to be 20 years old. During that period, the member states and observer countries carried out the development of the Arctic. It is important to note that all the countries of the Arctic Council are aware that national interests in the Arctic,

---

<sup>1</sup> See.: Matvienko V.I. Zakon o razvitii Arktiki stanet nadezhnym pravovym fundamentom dlya realizacii ekonomicheskix interesov Rossii. URL: <http://www.arctic-info.ru/ExpertOpinion/25-11-2015/zakon-o-razvitii-arktiki-stanet-nadezhnim-pravovim-fundamentom-dla-realizacii-ekonomicheskix-interesov-rossii>; Rogozin D.O. Krizisy prihodiat i uhodyat, a Arktika — vechna. URL: <http://www.arctic-info.ru/ExpertOpinion/26-11-2015/krizisi-prihodiat-i-uhodat--a-arktika---vecna>; Donskoj S.E. My ne dolzhny otkladyvat osvoenie Arktiki do luchshix vremen. URL: [http://www.arctic-info.ru/ExpertOpinion/27-11-2015/mi-ne-doljni-otkladyvat\\_-osvoenie-arktiki-do-lychshix-vremen](http://www.arctic-info.ru/ExpertOpinion/27-11-2015/mi-ne-doljni-otkladyvat_-osvoenie-arktiki-do-lychshix-vremen); Chilingarov A.N. Artur Chilingarov: «Arktika demonstriruet sebya kak zona sotrudnichestva». URL: <http://rcoa.ru/news/konferentsii/artur-chilingarov-arktika-demonstriruet-sebya-kak-zona-sotrudnichestva>; Dmitriy Kobylkin: «Realizaciya infrastrukturyh proektov na Yamale obespechit dinamichnoe razvitie Sevmorputi». URL: <http://rcoa.ru/news/konferentsii/dmitriy-kobylkin-realizatsiya-infrastrukturyh-proektov-na-yamale-obespechit-dinamichnoe-azvitie-sevmorputi>; Barbin V.V. Arktika trebuyet sereznogo otnosheniya i mezhgosudarstvennogo vzaimodejstviya. URL: [http://www.arctic-info.ru/Interview/27-11-2015/arktika-trebuyet-ser\\_eznogo-otnosenia-i-mej-gosudarstvennogo-vzaimodeistvia-i-dr](http://www.arctic-info.ru/Interview/27-11-2015/arktika-trebuyet-ser_eznogo-otnosenia-i-mej-gosudarstvennogo-vzaimodeistvia-i-dr). (Accessed: 24 March 2016)

especially economic, could be realized only through the close cooperation. Russia is also open to mutually beneficial cooperation in the Arctic, including Asian countries while respecting their independence, sovereign rights and jurisdiction of the Arctic states.

Establishment of a State Commission on the development of the Arctic confirms the notion that Russia intends to secure and ensure the long-term national interests in the Arctic. Priority issue for Russia is the preservation of the Arctic as a territory of peace, stability and cooperation.

### References

1. Khabrieva T.Y., Medvedev D.Y. Kak Rossii zashhitit svoi interesy v Arktike. Zakonom po-belomu. *Rossiyskaya gazeta*. 21 yanvarya 2015. № 9. URL: <http://www.rg.ru/2015/01/21/arktika.html> (Accessed: 05 March 2016).
2. Tsybul'skij A.V. Sistema strategicheskogo planirovaniya socialno-ekonomicheskogo planirovaniya Arkticheskoy zony Rossijskoj Federacii. *Sovremennye proizvoditelnye sily*. 2015. № 3. pp.10.
3. Donskoj S.E. Doklad Ministra prirodnyh resursov i ekologii Rossijskoj Federacii na Nauchnoj sessii Obshhego sobraniya chlenov Rossijskoj akademii nauk 16 dekabrya 2014 g. *Nauchno-tekhnicheskie problemy osvoeniya Arktiki*. RAN. M.: Nauka, 2015. pp.9.
4. Lobkovskij L.I. Rossiyskaya zayavka na ustanovlenie vneshnih granic kontinentalnogo shelfa v Arktike poshla na vtoroj krug. *Arkticheskie vedomosti*. 2015. № 3. pp. 30-39.
5. Pavlov K.V., Selin V.S. Problemy razvitiya gruzopotokov Severnogo morskogo puti i metody ih resheniya. *Vestnik UGUES. Nauka, obrazovanie, ekonomika. Seriya "Ekonomika"*. 2015. № 2. pp. 78.

UDC 32.019.5+327

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.17

## The international image of the state as an instrument of soft power



© Anna A. Koptyaeva, master degree student, the Department of Regional Studies, International Relations and Political Science, Institute of Social, Humanitarian and Political Science of NArFU named after M.V. Lomonosov. E-mail: ankouanka@mail.ru

**Abstract.** The international image of the state as an instrument of soft power is revealed on the example of Russia as one of the Arctic states. The analysis of the main aspects of the international image of Russia, a set of causes and factors that influence the perception of Russia abroad have been analyzed. The specific of the international image making of Russia is discussed.

**Keywords:** Russia, international image of the state, the Arctic, soft power, the image of Russia in the world

### Introduction

Constructing and advancing the international image of the country has become an important issue. In an era of globalization, many states are engaged in purposeful creation of their positive image, its development and promotion both at home and abroad through “soft power” mechanisms. States authorities realize that it is an important tool to protect national interests, internal consolidation, strengthening of national pride, attracting foreign investment and increased influence in the world. Countries are trying to include “soft power” in their foreign policy strategies and expand its impact. Russia has significant resources of the “soft power” in the international arena, but is still strongly behind its partners and the countries of the Arctic region. The use of the cultural potential of the country as a toolkit of its image strategy is minimized now. Skilled use of this resource will allow Russia to activate hidden features that can have a serious impact on its internal development, and place in the system of international relations, including the Arctic. With a view to an integrated and comprehensive study of the topic, the author identifies and analyzes the formation of the international image of the Russian Federation abroad, in theory and in practice.

The methodology of research is based on theoretical implications discussed by Alexeeva T. [1] who wrote a lot on perception of Russia in the world; Galumov E.A. [2, 2003], one of the leading experts in the international image of the Russian Federation; Sulakshin S.S. and Hvylya-Olinter N.A. [3, 2015] employees of the Centre of political thought and ideology who made a report on perception of country in the world for the last year. In general, it could be concluded that the de-

gree of knowledge of the topic is sufficiently high. However, the international image of Russia as a tool of “soft power” is not in a focus of the modern researchers.

Source database for this article is represented by various international ratings, official data of the Russian research holding “Romir”, as well as the official Russian media sites and organizations engaged in advocating the positive image of Russia.

### ***Perception of Russia abroad and within the country***

Today Russia is perceived rather negatively in the world, and the attitude of the international community is getting worse. Our compatriots have recently become better respond on internal and external policy of Russia, but the current situation is that we cannot talk about the positive perception of the country abroad. Strengthening the position of Russia in the Arctic, the stabilization of the Russian situation in the future, the country's growing influence on the world energy market scares competitors and opponents. Over the past decades, the image of the new Russia in the eyes of the world community has repeatedly changed its evolution has come a long way. First, it was the image of “totalitarian empire” of evil supported in its “restructuring and transparency”. Then — the image of the “young democracy and a market economy”. Later — back to the “unpredictable, insidious, and therefore dangerous”. Now Russia is drawn as dangerous, not only militarily but also as an aggressive and strong economic competitor [1].

Researchers at the Centre of the problem analysis and public management design received an expert evaluation of the dynamics of global community attitude to Russia. The experts were asked to assess the attitudes to the country in specific periods. Then the resulting estimates were averaged.

In 2014 BBC World Service was conducted large-scale study to assess the nature of the influence of the sixteen largest states on the international affairs. 24.5 thousand people from 24 countries, including Russia, participated in the survey. It should be noted that the survey was conducted during the period December 17, 2013 — April 28, 2014, i.e. even before the Ukrainian crisis and partly coinciding with the Olympic Games in Sochi. The study found out that in half of the countries attitudes to Russia had become worse [3, p. 5].

According to the latest survey (August 2015), conducted by the Pew Research Center, neither Russia nor its President Vladimir Putin did not enjoy particular respect or support from abroad. On average only 30% of respondents from foreign countries are positive towards Russia. In 26 countries negative attitude towards Russia are dominating. Extremely negative are Poland and Jordan (in both cases, 80%). In the first case, this perception is the result of long-running tensions between the two countries.

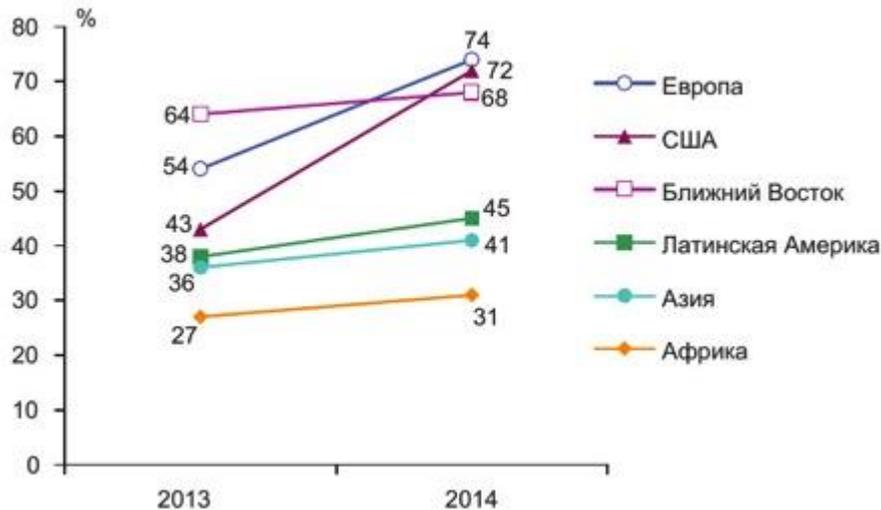


Figure 1. Negative attitude towards Russia in the world [2, p. 4]

Public opinion in Jordan is perhaps influenced by the fact that Moscow supports the regime of President Bashar Al-Assad in neighbouring Syria and Jordan has to accommodate hundreds of thousands of refugees. Anti-russian sentiments are also particularly pronounced in Israel (74%), Japan (73%), Germany (70%) and France (70%)<sup>1</sup>.

The highest level of support towards Russia is celebrated in Vietnam (75%), but the countries where Russia is perceived positively by more than a half of the surveyed population are only Ghana (56%) and China (51%). In some countries, the population surveyed has no particular opinions about Russia. Such groups include more than half of the respondents in Ethiopia and about one-third of respondents in Pakistan, India, Burkina Faso, Tanzania, Senegal, Argentina and Peru<sup>2</sup>.

In order to present the objective image of Russia in the world today, we should have a look at the relevant international ratings and indices for 2015. According to The World Competitiveness Yearbook, Russia has 45<sup>th</sup> place (out of 60) by competitiveness, being between Slovakia and India. The first places in this rating are occupied by Singapore, China, and United States<sup>3</sup>. Among Arctic countries, Russia occupies the last place (table 1). Annual ranking of global competitiveness is a rating of the global study of the world's countries in terms of economic competitiveness done by the Europe's leading management Institute (Institute of Management Development), based in Lausanne (Switzerland). The rating shows how states can create the conditions for effective development of companies and economic growth by controlling their economic and human resources.

<sup>1</sup> Main results of the poll conducted by the Pew Centre in 40 countries, March 25 — May 17 2015, 45 435 people participated.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid.

<sup>3</sup> The 2015 IMD World Competitiveness Scoreboard. URL: <http://www.imd.org/uupload/imd.website/wcc/scoreboard.pdf> (Accessed: 24 November 2015).

Countries are estimated at 369 indicators divided into four groups: the overall efficiency of the economy, including macroeconomic indicators; governance, including corruption; business efficiency; development of infrastructure. The rankings take into account the official statistics and surveys of the experts.

Table 1

*Russia's place in the world competitiveness ranking  
"The World Competitiveness Yearbook" among the Arctic countries*

Country	Place in world competitiveness ranking The World Competitiveness Yearbook
United States	1
Canada	5
Norway	7
Denmark	8
Sweden	9
Finland	20
Iceland	24
<b>Russia</b>	<b>45</b>

Press freedom Index " Global Press Freedom"(Freedom House) among 199 countries Russia gets 83 points (from 95), that is considered to be one of the least free<sup>4</sup>. Among the Arctic countries, the Russian Federation is the last on the index (table 2). Sweden and Norway have 10 points and they are characterized as States with the free press.

Table 2

*Russia in the World press freedom index among the Arctic countries*

Country	Press freedom index
Norway	10
Sweden	10
Finland	11
Denmark	12
Iceland	16
Canada	18
United States	22
<b>Russia</b>	<b>83</b>

<sup>4</sup> Freedom of the Press 2015. URL: <https://freedomhouse.org/report/freedom-press/freedom-press-2015#.VkHmf5Cs1qM> (Accessed: 24 November 2015).

The World press freedom index is an annual survey. It is issued by international non-governmental organization “Reporters without Borders”, which is a community for the protection of press freedom and journalists' rights. Conclusions are grounded on 43 key indicators, including such criteria as: the presence of various kinds of violations against journalists (murder, imprisonment, physical violence and threats) and the media (censorship, bans and confiscated editions of publications, closing editions); the level of selfcensorship; the degree of political and financial dependence; legal issues (fines, the state monopoly, the existence of a regulatory body, etc.); the possibility of free access to the Internet and so on. The index has scores ranging from zero (the best indicator, means the lack of any restrictions for media) and above (the worst).

Rating of insolvency of the state (Failed States Index, Fragile States Index) reflects the ability (and failure) of the authorities to monitor the integrity of the territory, as well as demographic, political and economic situation in the country. Among the 178 countries, Russia earned 90 points out of 120, along with Iran, Egypt, Uzbekistan, and Tajikistan. The most stable and wealthy country is Finland<sup>5</sup>. Research and accompanying rankings are annually done by an independent public organization “The Fund for Peace” (specializes in the study of conditions causing wars and ways to prevent them), together with the scientific journal “Foreign Policy”. During a year experts analyze countries and related information through a special system tool to assess conflict (Conflict Assessment System Tool). The analysis is based on 12 criteria — the so-called "indicators of vulnerability" that merged into three groups: social, economic and political (stable and permanent emigration from the country, uneven economic development, availability and quality of public services, etc.). Among the Arctic countries, Russia occupies the last place in this rating (table 3).

Table 3

*Russia's place in the ranking of the insolvency of the State  
"Failed States Index" among the Arctic countries*

Country	Place in rating of insolvency States "Failed States Index"
Finland	18
Norway	20
Sweden	20
Denmark	22
Iceland	23
Canada	26
United States	35
<b>Russia</b>	<b>80</b>

<sup>5</sup> Fragile States Index. URL: <http://fsi.fundforpeace.org/rankings-2015> (Accessed: 24 November 2015).

The Rule of Law Index examines the extent to which the countries follow the principles of law and protect human rights. Among 180 countries, Russian index is 0.47, along with Mexico, Ecuador, Zambia, Tanzania, Kyrgyzstan, which is the average value. The highest index has Norway (0.87)<sup>6</sup>. It is calculated by the methodology of international non-governmental organization "The World Justice Project" based on a combination of public statistics and the results of the global survey of experts. The index is composed of 47 variables that characterize the level of legal development and legislative practice in different countries around the world. All variables are divided into eight groups: limiting the powers of the institutions; absence of corruption; order and security; protection of fundamental rights; the transparency of the institutions; compliance with laws; civil justice; criminal justice. Among the Arctic countries, Russia occupies the last place (table 4).

Table 4

*Russia's place in "The Rule of Law Index"  
among the Arctic countries*

Country	Place in the rule of law index «The Rule of Law Index»
Norway	0.87
Denmark	0.87
Finland	0.85
Sweden	0.85
Canada	0.78
United States	0.73
<b>Russia</b>	<b>0.47</b>

In accordance with ratings of the project "Political Atlas of modern times" <sup>7</sup> for 192 states, Russia compared with the Arctic countries (table 5) is:

- on the 7<sup>th</sup> place in the index of international influence (between Britain and India; the first place — United States). The index combines many important indicators and ratings: defence expenditure, the share in the authorized capital of the IMF, world exports, financing of the United Nations and the share in GDP, population and the size of the army, etc.;
- on the 27<sup>th</sup> place in the index of statehood (between Denmark and Iceland; the first are the United States, Japan, Switzerland). The index was designed to show the degree of independence of the state, its survival and independent development. Index shows whether the state itself decides its internal and external affairs or not; effectiveness of the use of natural resources and dependence from other countries;

<sup>6</sup> The Rule of Law Index. URL: <http://data.worldjusticeproject.org/> (Accessed: 24 November 2015).

<sup>7</sup> Politicheskij atlas sovremennosti. URL: <http://worldpolities.org/> (Accessed: 24 November 2015).

- at the 93<sup>th</sup> place in the index of institutional foundations of democracy (between Peru and South Africa; the first are Switzerland, Canada, Netherlands). The index takes into account factors that strengthen the foundations of democracy: the continuity of democratic traditions, unconstitutional power change; the involvement of citizens in the electoral process, etc.;
- at the 73<sup>rd</sup> place in quality of life rating (the first are Luxembourg, Ireland, Norway). The index includes GDP per capita, life expectancy, health care costs, education level, etc.;
- at the 81<sup>st</sup> place in the index of external and internal threats (most secure countries are Canada, France, Netherlands). Index of threats includes several indicators: attempts to coups, spontaneous disasters, epidemics, the presence of illegal movements, threats of aggression and terrorism, as well as the problems of water supply, the availability of territorial claims, unbalanced export etc.

Table 5

*Russia's place in the rankings of the project "Political Atlas of modern times" among the Arctic countries*

Country	Index capacity international influence	Place by index statehood	Index of the institutional foundations of democracy	Place on quality of life	Index external and internal threats
The USA	1	1	18	5	118
Canada	11	15	2	15	192
Norway	42	31	5	3	163
Denmark	44	26	4	16	176
Sweden	30	11	8	12	188
Finland	52	10	6	17	186
Iceland	137	28	12	7	147
<b>Russia</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>93</b>	<b>73</b>	<b>81</b>

We have just looked through the main official international ratings figures of Russia in other countries. It should be noted that they are not high, except for the international influence and security. This once again updates the theme of international image of Russia.

Galumov E.A. notes that the state image is directly related to the attitude towards it not only among the foreign public, but also among its own citizens [2, p. 107]. Today, every fifth Russian (21%) considers that despite the well-being of the people, the state should pay an increased attention to strengthening of Russia's prestige in the world. In 2003, such a response was given by

less than half of the respondents (12%). Strengthening the Russian state is one of the most important tasks today for 18 % of Russians and this problem worries people today more than 12 years ago, when this response was given by just 11%. According to the author, such a rise of interest to the image of Russia in the world is associated with the new global challenges and threats, military and political confrontation of our state and the western countries, changing geopolitical situation in the world not in Russia's favor. "Updating and enhancing the importance of the issues of Russia's prestige in the world and strengthening of the state means that the country's population today, more than ever, needs a global goal, the national idea" — explains President of the Research holding "Romir" A. Milekhin<sup>8</sup>.

In March 2015, The Research holding "Romir" and the ISPR RAS Centre of the case studies conducted nationwide poll on trust for various social institutions. Most similar study was conducted in November 2013. The obtained results demonstrate how attitudes of Russians have changed in the past year and a half. During this time, Russians strengthened their confidence in the original principle "for the faith, Tsar and fatherland". More than three quarters of those surveyed expressed confidence to the President, the army and the Orthodox Church and it was 11-16% higher than in 2013 (pic. 2)<sup>9</sup>. Feature of our culture is that the Russian mentality always was positive towards power as a gift of heaven. The people have certain expectations in relation to the power (caring, fairness, resolute struggle against the thieves, embezzlers of state property and other criminals, strengthening the power of Russia and the realization of its purpose in the world) [2, p. 11].



Figure 2. Dynamics of trust for social institutes (%) / «ROMIR», ISPI RAS, March 2015

<sup>8</sup> Issledovaniya: Narod mechtaet o nacional'noj idee. URL: [http://romir.ru/studies/724\\_1446498000/](http://romir.ru/studies/724_1446498000/) (Accessed: 23 November 2015).

<sup>9</sup> Doverie na patriotizme. URL: [http://romir.ru/studies/664\\_1430254800/](http://romir.ru/studies/664_1430254800/) (Accessed: 23 November 2015).

It should be noted that trust of the citizens has significantly increased: the Government of the Russian Federation (+20%), Council of Federation (+18%) and the State Duma (+17%). Apparently, the events of the past fifteen months: success at the Olympic Games in Sochi, joining of Crimea, sanctions against Russia, food embargo against a number of Western countries and the economic crisis rallied the nation, triggering a wave of patriotism. It is as high as it has never been before. President of “Romir” and Director of the Center for case studies ISPR RAS Andrey Milekhin explains the poll results with the “outstanding pride of Russians, fatigue from the anxiety and uncertainty, the need for values and objectives. Paradoxically sounds, but problems in politics and the economy shook the nation. The Russians saw the position of authorities and generously responded with a great credit of trust”<sup>10</sup>.

Considering how Russians perceive the Russian Federation, we can observe the rise of trust indicators towards state and increased national unity. It is well known that improving the situation in the country and a positive attitude to the internal and external policy of the state are an integral part of the international image of Russia. This lays the foundation for creating a successful image of the country.

#### ***Tools of international image of Russia***

It cannot be said that Russia does not build its attractive image in foreign countries. In the author's opinion, the formation of the international image of the country is mainly due to the efforts of the state institutions and the media. One of the key institutions that forms the broadcasts and subsequently monitors the international image of Russia is the Ministry of Foreign Affairs (MFA). The Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Russian Federation provision No 865 (approved by the President of the Russian Federation on the 11<sup>th</sup> of July 2004) set one of the most important missions of the MFA — coordination and dissemination of information about foreign and domestic policy of the Russian Federation, socio-economic and cultural life of the country. In the “National security strategy of the Russian Federation until the year 2020” (approved by the President of the Russian Federation May 12, 2009, Decree No 537) state's interests in the information sphere have been outlined. The importance of communication with internal and external audiences is identified in the “Doctrine of informational security of the Russian Federation”, approved by the President Vladimir Putin on the 9<sup>th</sup> of September 2000, Order No 1895.

Institutional structures responsible for establishing social and cultural connection and international cooperation have been designed and developed. The most significant is the Office for interregional and cultural relations with foreign countries under the administration of the Presi-

---

<sup>10</sup> Ibid

dent. It was established in February 2005. The other important institution is the Commission of the Public Chamber of the Russian Federation on international cooperation and diplomacy, established in 2006, and Russian Center for international scientific and cultural cooperation under the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the Russian Federation. However, the formation of a positive image of the country abroad is not the primary and only function of the listed entities. Thus, there is no single state body that coordinates these activities in Russia. Developed government projects aimed at formation of a positive image of Russia in the world could be classified as follows:

*Economic projects.* One of the traditional forms — economic forums. The Russian business community plays an active role in these projects. Their objectives are: creating a favourable investment climate, the intensification of economic cooperation, shaping perceptions of Russia as a reliable and stable partner.

*Cultural, scientific, educational projects.* Russia traditionally occupies confident position in these sphere. In 2014 A Year of Culture was announced in Russia. 14-16 December 2015 the IV St. Petersburg International Cultural Forum was held. It was devoted to 70<sup>th</sup> anniversary of UNESCO. In 2016, in St. Petersburg will host International Cultural Forum. The “Russkiy Mir Foundation”, headed by V. Nikonovym, promotes the Russian language and culture.

*Social projects.* Russian state and non-governmental institutions focus on broad-based participation in various social international projects ranging from active participation in programmes to combat AIDS and drug abuse and ending with humanitarian assistance to the populations of countries affected by natural disasters. This is one of the most traditional, but at the same time efficient ways to improve the image of the country in the world.

*Sports projects* associated primarily with the attempts of Russia to become a center of sports events on a global scale. For example, the Winter Olympics in Sochi in 2014, and the World Cup in 2018. The role of the “hostess” for worldwide sporting events adds the popularity to the country and increases its international prestige.

The project “*Church diplomacy*” — the insistence of the traditional destination for Russian public policy may be quite productive in case of the increasing influence of the religious and ethnic factor in world politics. This kind of projects can be attributed to the world religious Summit held from 2006 to 2011. The Summit participants did not discuss religious issues but the most serious problems and challenges of the time: terrorism and extremism, the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction, epidemics, drug addiction, poverty, the environment and education of youth. Historical event was a meeting of Patriarch of Moscow and all Russia Kirill and Pope Francis, which took place on the 12<sup>th</sup> of February 2016 in Havana, Cuba.

Project «*Festivals*» — celebrations to mark a particularly important historical dates, official status of the socio-political events and events within the framework of the informal meetings with the leaders of the world politics. Among the most important projects is 300-year anniversary celebration of St. Petersburg and 70-anniversary of the Victory.

*Media projects.* We cannot say that nothing is being done to inform foreign people about situation in Russia. In 2003 the Russian Government determined that the main tool for “managing” the country’s image was agency “RIA Novosti”. 10 years later, on the 9<sup>th</sup> of December 2013 the Decree of the President of the RF established an international information agency “Russia today”. It was the successor to all projects and property of the “RIA Novosti”. Its task is to highlight Russian public policy and life in the Russian Federation. The “Russia Today” manager is Dmitry Kiselyov, a journalist, ex-Deputy Chief of the VGTRK, host of the program “Vesti nedeli” on the TV channel “Russia”<sup>11</sup>. The Agency Director is appointed and dismissed by the President of Russia. The Agency is included in the list of strategic enterprises and strategic joint-stock companies. Since 2004, it is actively developed and some large-scale media projects appeared. Among them: “Valdaysky Club”, “Russia Profile”, “Russia Today”. A pioneer in this area is a joint project of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs and RIA Novosti “Open Russia”<sup>12</sup> (2003). The project is organized as press conferences and discussions of current events in the country and Russian foreign policy attended by MFA officials and leading newsmakers. A favorable international image means positive information about the country, which should attract foreign public. However, the sources listed do not always represent positive information. Negative informational aspects occupy a prominent position.

In 2004, “Valday discussion club”<sup>13</sup> was established. The club annual meetings gather foreign experts and journalists to discuss various issues with the representatives of Russian authorities, political parties and non-governmental institutions. Since 2014, the club changed the format “story about Russia” to shaping the global image of the country, from the study of the situation in Russia to the skilled and objective assessment of the world's political and economic problems.

Since the beginning of 2005, a weekly journal in English “Russia Profile”<sup>14</sup> is being issued. The journal presents an analysis of the political and economic processes in Russia. According to the Chairman of the Duma Committee on International Affairs, a member of the Board of Trustees Konstantin Kosachev: “the journal caused great interest in the United States”.

---

<sup>11</sup> Rossiya segodnya (Mezhdunarodnoe informacionnoe agentstvo) // Megaenciklopediya Kirilla i Mefodiya. URL: [http://megabook.ru/article/Rossiia%20segodnya%20\(Mezhdunarodnoe%20informacionnoe%20agentstvo\)](http://megabook.ru/article/Rossiia%20segodnya%20(Mezhdunarodnoe%20informacionnoe%20agentstvo)) (Accessed: 26 November 2015).

<sup>12</sup> Otkritaya Rossiya. URL: <https://openrussia.org/> (Accessed: 25 November 2015).

<sup>13</sup> Valdai Discussion Club. URL: <http://valdaiclub.com/> (Accessed: 25 November 2015).

<sup>14</sup> Profile Russia. URL: <http://www.profilerussia.com/ru/> (Accessed: 25 November 2015).

In December 2005, a TV-channel “Russia Today”<sup>15</sup> began broadcasting in English. Now “Russia Today” has several foreign offices in London, Washington, Paris and Jerusalem. Soon they plan to open News Bureau in Cairo and then in New York, and build up a network in the UIS. “Russia Today” aims to show Russian opinion on Russian and the world affairs. Many experts doubt whether the channel is able to cope with this task successfully, because the foreign people have quite a wide range of news channels such as BBC, CNN, Euronews, etc. They believe that “Russia Today” is unlikely to be able to make a real competition, and the “Russian view” on world events can hardly be interesting. Success of the channel depends on the image of Russia in the world<sup>16</sup>. December 10, 2015: the Russian broadcaster celebrated 10 years since its establishment. It has 24-hour broadcasting in more than 100 countries around the world. In addition, RT is a leader among news channels on YouTube: more than 3 billion people watch RT. It is more than CNN, BBC, Euronews and other information channels<sup>17</sup>. According to the author, this might give the prospect of improving the image of Russia in the world. Chances for that increase significantly every year.

### **Conclusion**

In modern terms, the problem of positive image of Russia appears to be urgent and important. As it is well known, the Arctic is the most important geopolitical region, where national interest of leading foreign countries are clashing. So positioning of Russia, according to the considered ratings as the weakest among them could hardly contribute to our strategic interests in the Arctic region. The Ministry of Foreign Affairs has subdivisions responsible for the improvement of the country's image in the world. However, Russia has no purposeful line while shaping its image abroad. There is a small number of Russian media in foreign countries, broadcasting in foreign languages. The activities of the various structures involved in this process, looks inconsistent and fragmented. They are not united by a common goal and theoretically elaborated action programme.

Modern image of Russia, according to many researchers, is very controversial. "Many people and organizations are observing our fight with the economic crisis with great sympathy, as well as the increase of Russian influence in international affairs. Not less and those who look at it suspiciously, negatively, rejecting promising and mutually beneficial projects just because they come from Russia or Russia is its active participant" [1]. Quite right is Professor T. Alekseeva who emphasised that “Russia was reproached in its attempts to play on imperial regulation. This was evi-

---

<sup>15</sup> Russia Today. URL: <https://www.rt.com/> (Accessed: 25 November 2015).

<sup>16</sup> Formirovanie obraza Rossii kak aspekt publichnoy vneshney politiki. URL: <http://hr-portal.ru/article/formirovanie-obraza-rossii-kak-aspekt-publichnoy-vneshney-politiki> (Accessed: 25 November 2015).

<sup>17</sup> Khristenko A. Poka tolko 10: RT otmechaet yubilej. URL: <http://www.vesti7.ru/news?id=48802> (Accessed: 14 December 2015).

dent during the media campaign about the Russian expedition for the exploration of the Arctic shelf in summer 2007. "Washington Times", September 6, 2007: "aggressive Russia fully complies with its vengeful policies pursued by President Putin. He makes no secret of his desire to make Russia an influential and powerful state and to realize ambitions uses the resource the wealth of his country". Japanese newspaper "Asahi Shimbun" called the controversy between Russia, the United States, Norway, Denmark and Canada "a struggle to capture the Arctic" [1].

The main problem is that neither in Russian nor in Western public opinion have a clearly defined and adequate image of modern Russia. All views about our country are very fragmentary, contradictory and poorly decorated. Furthermore, the interest towards Russia in the world today is not so high. The lower is the interest to the country the greater are the stereotypes. It hardly can be good for the country's image. We also should remember that Russia is a target for a constant information warfare. Some media publish a lot on the current hybrid civil war inside Russia, when deliberately transcoding of national identities is carried out, a tension is injected in the sphere of inter-ethnic relations and a reassessment of national history is taking place<sup>18</sup>.

Therefore, effective shaping of a modern image of Russia, including the Russian Arctic are highly relevant. It requires legal regulation and direct state involvement in the development of Russian image in foreign countries.

## References

1. Alekseeva T.A. Rossiya v prostranstve globalnogo vospriyatiya. *Mezhdunarodnye processy. Zhurnal teorii mezhdunarodnyh otnoshenij i mirovoj politiki*. 2007. T.5. №2 (14). pp.52—63. URL: <http://www.inter-trends.ru/fourteen/005.htm> (Accessed: 23 November 2015).
2. Galumov E.A. *Mezhdunarodnyj imidzh Rossii: strategiya formirovaniya*. M.: Izvestiya, 2003. 450 p.
3. Sulakshin S.S., Hvylya-Olinter N.A. Otnoshenie k Rossii v mire. *Trudy Centra nauchnoj politicheskoy mysli i ideologii*. Vyp. № 8, yanvar 2015. M.: Nauka i politika, 2015. 28 p.

---

<sup>18</sup> Vladimir Lepelin. V Rossii razvorachaetsya gibridnaya grazhdanskaya vojna. URL: <http://ria.ru/analytics/20160314/1389538763.html> (Accessed: 14 March 2016).

UDC 656.02

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.32

## National Arctic Transport Line: problems and prospects



© **Nikolay A. Pegin**, Candidate of Sociological Sciences, director general of JSC “Development Corporation of Kamchatka”. Author of more than 30 published scientific works. Researched the establishment of the local self-government in the Far East Region, the issues of political and social design. E-mail: office-msk@krkk.pro

**Abstract.** The article represents a rationale for the project of the National Arctic Transport Line Murmansk — Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky and its problems and prospects.

**Keywords:** *National Arctic Transport Line, Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky, Murmansk, a port hub, the Arctic, the NSR*

International shipping lines are the cheapest and most popular form of delivery worldwide. They occupy the 1<sup>st</sup> place in the structure of the global cargo turnover. According to the UN, today the general tonnage of maritime transport amounts to 99.8%, and only 0.15% is by rail (0.01% for air transport) in the total volume of transportation between Asia and Europe<sup>1</sup>. The largest transport hub between Asia and Europe is the Suez Canal with a turnover of nearly 1 billion tons of cargo annually, or about 10% of the world's cargo turnover, which brings more than 5.5 billion dollars to Egypt<sup>2</sup>. In a short-term perspective, transit of goods will bring even more due to the opened backup channel. For comparison: the Panama Canal today deals with about 300 million tons of cargoes, that brings more than 2 billion dollars per year<sup>3</sup>.

Nevertheless, all our Oriental partners have showed a great interest in transshipments via the Northern sea route (NSR): China, Japan and South Korea. It is determined by the NSR advantages in comparison with traditional shipping routes (it is much shorter and under certain conditions might be cheaper than traditional routes).

---

<sup>1</sup> UNCTAD, World Bank, Boeing World Air Cargo Forecasts 2014, 2015

<sup>2</sup> Administraciya Sueckogo kanala. Otchyot «THE SUEZ CANAL: A GROWING CENTER FOR GLOBAL COMMERCE». URL: [http://www.egyptembassy.net/media/1129-2059\\_Egypt\\_SuezCanal\\_061915i1.pdf](http://www.egyptembassy.net/media/1129-2059_Egypt_SuezCanal_061915i1.pdf) (Accessed: 05 March 2016).

<sup>3</sup> Administraciya Panamskogo kanala. URL: <https://www.pancanal.com/eng/general/reporte-anual/2014/pdf/annual-report-2014.pdf> (Accessed: 05 March 2016).

### *The national Arctic transport line: key issues*

The National Arctic Transport Line (NATL), unlike the traditional definition of NSR<sup>4</sup>, is a broader concept and implies the creation and development of an integrated infrastructure project for the organization of international transport line with specific entry and exit points: Murmansk transport hub in its western part and Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky transport hub in its eastern part, as well as supporting ports.



Figure 1. National Arctic Transportation Line in a global sea route scheme

The Russian Federation does not actively participate in world trade via traditional sea routes<sup>5</sup>. Therefore, the NATL might be an instrument of entry to this market by offering its product [1]. The organisation of such a transport line in the Arctic: will integrate the new transport route in international traffic between Asia and the West coast of America and Europe; will contribute to the development of the territories along the NSR; will provide the Russian presence in the Arctic and will open an access to Arctic resources.

Of course, in order to *uncover the unique logistical advantages* and to create cost-effective transport line, there is a need to address a number of key issues:

<sup>4</sup> According to p. 1 st. 5.1 KTM RF, «The area of Northern sea route is the water adjacent to the northern coast of the Russian Federation, including inner sea waters, territorial sea, adjacent area and the exclusive economic zone of the Russian Federation, delimited in the East by the sea delimitation line with the United States of the America and parallel of Dezhnev Cape in the Bering strait, in the West by the meridian of Cape Zhelaniya to Novaya Zemlya archipelago, eastern coastal line of Novaya Zemlya archipelago and the western borders of the straits Matochkin Shar, Karskie Vorota, Yugorskij Shar».

<sup>5</sup> UNCTAD. URL: <http://unctad.org/en/pages/PublicationWebflyer.aspx?publicationid=1374> (Accessed: 05 March 2016).



Figure 2. The NSR transportation volumes<sup>6</sup>.

- 1) Quality development of ports, logistic, rescue, hydrometeorological and navigation infrastructure.
- 2) A need to develop a single transparent terms of use, security and insurance relevant to international standards, and their control at the national level.
- 3) The availability of icebreakers; competitiveness and transparency of tariffs for icebreaking pilotage. This requires flexible, transparent and unified tariff policy profitable for carriers and competitive with alternative routes' prices.
- 4) Construction of Arctic container vessels with ice class not lower than Arc7 or new nuclear vessels, capable of transportation of not less than 2000 TEU of cargo, and regular icebreaking pilotage.
- 5) Simplification of getting permissions for shipping.

Publications on this subject note the need to establish a legal and regulatory framework; improvement of servicing the international transport corridor along the NSR (freight terminals, communication centres, etc.); ensuring the NSR the status of as an independent Eurasian transport corridor [2, p. 46, 49].

Some issues have already got emerging plans to address them within the framework of an integrated project for the development of the NSR, approved in June 2015 by The Government of the Russian Federation<sup>7</sup>. Increase in annual traffic via the NSR up to 80 million tons by the year 2030<sup>8</sup> is an optimistic projection. The main objective set for its development is 17 ports, improvement of navigational, hydrographic and hydrological assistance, and emergency and rescue centers along the

<sup>6</sup> According to the data of Northern Sea Route Administration and Non-commercial partnership for the coordination of NSR use.

<sup>7</sup> Dalnejshee razvitie Severnogo morskogo puti. URL: <http://en.portnews.ru/digest/16895/> (Accessed: 30 March 2016).

<sup>8</sup> Soobshhenie Arkadiya Dvorkovicha na soveshhanii s vice-premerami. URL: <http://government.ru/news/18410/> (Accessed: 24 March 2016)

NSR. All this is aimed at ensuring defense issues, as well as the development and construction of marine communication systems. A contribution to the study of scientific and technical problems of the Arctic makes the RAS by implementing a comprehensive program “Search research for the development of the AZRF” and its 100 projects with a total budget of 200 million rubles [3].

In addition, today the AZRF development strategy and national security strategy until 2025 are under development. A State Commission for the development of the Arctic is now established. Due to the instructions of the President, Ministry for the development of the Far East ordered a special research on development of a competitive NSR model at the Analytical Centre of the Government of the Russian Federation. In accordance with the instructions of D.O. Rogozin from 03.12.2015, the pilot flight of a nuclear lighter carrier “Sevmorput” via the route Murmansk — Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky might be done this year. The Ministry of Transport is now working on “The Arctic ports development programme” due to the increasing importance of the AZRF. The same way the work of the Arctic and Antarctic Expert Council is being done. It generates proposals for the development of NSR for Far East Development Fund, whose director is the Chairman of the Working Group on the development of the NSR, established by order of the Minister for the development of the Far East.

Despite all of this, one of the key issues, namely the formation of regulatory mechanisms and the selection *of a single body* responsible for the development of the NSR and the creation of the NATL, remains relevant. The NSR Administration performs primarily as permitting, monitoring and provision of information services. The State Commission on Arctic development is a strategic focal point for interaction of federal bodies of executive power, and other state bodies, local government bodies and organizations in addressing socio-economic and other tasks related to the development of the AZRF and national security<sup>9</sup>. Integrated development of NSR and the NATL requires a responsible body, which will become a centre of competence and decision-making. There is also a need for certainty on the issue of a *single operator* or management company or consortium with the assistance of major international transport companies and state corporations. A single operator for these transport lines could serve a “single window” for carriers to address the issues related to cargoes and transportation through the national Arctic routes. Thus, this project should be a joint project of the state and business, where one can invest, use and receive various multiplicative effects.

#### ***Securing of transportation along the NATL, port-hubs***

This approach is motivated by the fact that international maritime transportation is a business. In order to ensure a truly integrated development of the NATL (NSR) and to attract carriers it is neces-

---

<sup>9</sup> Polozhenie o Gosudarstvennoj komissii po voprosam razvitiya Arktiki, utv. Postanovleniem Pravitelstva RF № 228 ot 14.03.2015

sary to take into account the interests of business, profitability, delivery times, terms of contracts, safety of lines. Carriers are not prepared to assume all the risks of such an infrastructure project. For this purpose, it is necessary to ensure appropriate conditions and safeguards for the carries, so it would be more profitable not to carry cargoes through the Suez or Panama, but send them via the NSR.

Establishment of such lines means consolidation of cargoes at ports-hubs while entering or leaving the Arctic waters and using icebreakers or nuclear carriers. Hubs will play the role of distributor for further feeder transport or overload point for the international transport lines. Shipping containers from other regions could be done with the use of the Arctic container vessels of greater capacity and without icebreakers' assistance. It will reduce the cost of transportation.

After the launch of the project, availability of infrastructure and organized plans of transportation (transport line), it will be possible to attract new carriers and investors (both Russian and foreign) and to increase cargo flow along the NSR in accordance with the existing plans and projections. The Arctic lines will grow due to the redistribution of cargo flows, especially between Asia and Europe, where traffic is around 19 million TEU. For example, from Japan and Korea to Europe it is more than 1.3 million TEU (7% of the Asian cargoes) and from China more than 8 million TEU (41% of the cargoes to Asia), 50% of these cargoes are going to the Nordic countries<sup>10</sup>. In the opposite direction — 51% goes from the Nordic countries to China, Korea and Japan [4]. All this potential flows could be made via the NSR in the near future. China says that they are ready to send 15% of cargoes via the NSR in the coming 10-15 years (and this is more than 350 billion dollars). So, here is a cause for optimism. Today China is the most active country using the NSR, after Russia. For the past 5 years, China has sent more than 900 thousand tons of cargo via the NSR<sup>11</sup>.

Furthermore, ensuring traffic on the NATL is possible due to the development of its own cargo base in the Far East of the Russian Federation. According to the Ministry of Transport, the overall assessment of the commercial base in the Far East could reach more than 200 million tons, i.e. increase by about 50% compared to current levels. In this regard, it is necessary to explore this scenario and to develop transport scheme of cargo delivery via the current transportation system of the region to redistribute this load effectively.

The NATL would not compete the Transsiberian railway, BAM and rail assets to Sakhalin, because their first priority is to solve the transport problems of economic development of the Western and Eastern Siberia. On the contrary, the country will have several strategic transport corridors or interregional links between the West and the East of the Russian Federation. It will reduce the load

---

<sup>10</sup> NEA Report: The Balance of Container Traffic amongst European Ports

<sup>11</sup> Na osnovu danih Administracii SMP i ocenam profesora Tokijskogo universiteta Nacuhiko Ocuka (Natsuhiko Otsuka). URL: <http://inosmi.ru/arctica/20141223/225102622.html> (Accessed: 24 March 2016)

of the railways and let them work for better transportation both inside the country and for export (and import) from Urals, Western and Eastern Siberia to Western and Eastern ports.

Today Russia's economic presence in APR is limited to supplies of the raw materials and a certain part of the transit traffic flows between Europe and Asia. Asian countries have an interest to cooperation with Russian companies in various sectors. The Far East can get large infrastructure projects and revitalize the economy of the region and Russia. Thus, in the next decade it will be possible to build international transportation hub connecting traffic flows from South-East Asia, the West coast of North America and Europe through the Arctic transport line based in Murmansk port and Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky, passing through the Arctic Zone of the Russian Federation. This will give a significant multiplier effect for the development of all related sectors of the economy, increase passenger traffic, and contribute to the creation of new jobs and the modernisation of infrastructure that ensures the safety of navigation.

### ***Seaport hub in Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky***

A key element in the creation of a national Arctic line is the formation of port-hub in Petropavlovsk-Kamchatskij. Therefore, it is important to highlight development issues on the Kamchatka peninsula, which plays a special role in a comprehensive project and the NATL. Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky is a high-litudinal ice-free port, located in close proximity to international shipping lines from North America to Asia. It is, in fact, the gateway to the Arctic in the North Pacific Ocean. 70% of Canadian goods (which is about 200 million tons) passes a way of 200-300 nautical miles off the coast of Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky<sup>12</sup>. In addition to its convenient location, there is a possibility of accumulation, storage, sorting, containerized shipments when delivered without the usual ice-class ships under Russian and foreign flag to Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky and loading on specialized fleet for further transportation along the NSR.

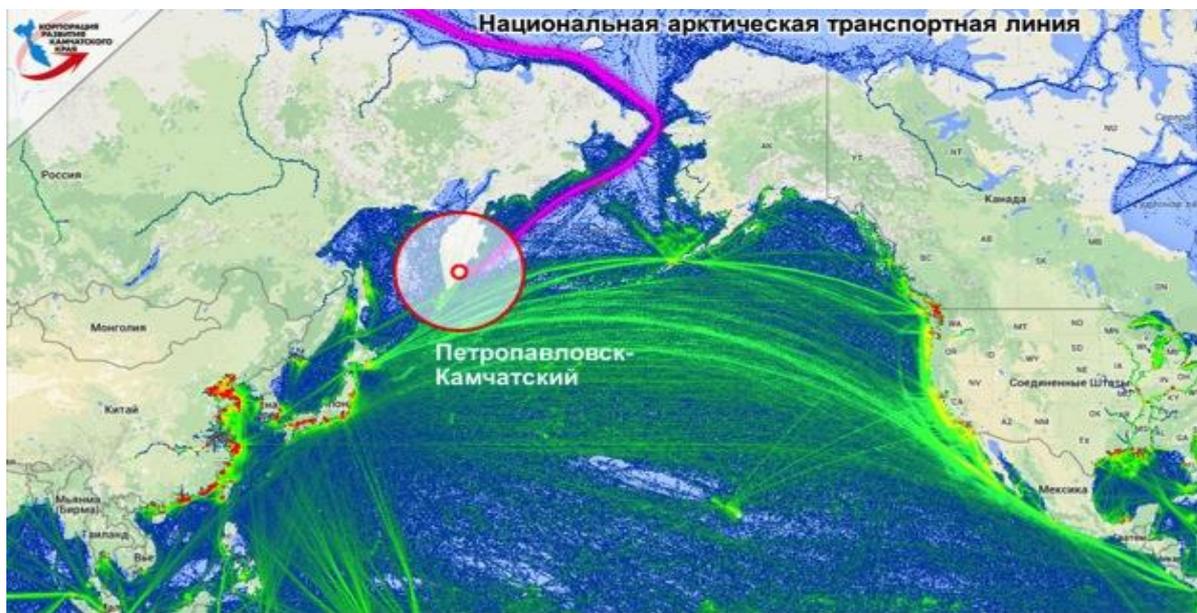
Thus, as mentioned above, it is possible to realize the idea of feeder transport of so-called "ice shuttles" with higer load and proper ice class. In August 2015, Russian Government decree established the territory of advanced development "Kamchatka"<sup>13</sup>. According to this document, the key specialization of the territory of advanced development are port industry and tourism. Thus, one of the main platforms of TAD "Kamchatka" is a sea port, which envisages the implementation of projects resulting in the development of port infrastructure and a transit port-hub for stockpiling and sorting of container cargoes during transportation along the NSR, as well as projects promoting Arctic tourism in the region.

---

<sup>12</sup> According to AAPA, marinetraffic.com

<sup>13</sup> Postanovlenie Pravitelstva RF ot 28 avgusta 2015 g. № 899

Modernization will increase the annual turnover of the port up to 8 million tons<sup>14</sup> with the prospect of further increasing to meet growing transport needs of an active development of the Arctic transportation lines.



Picture 3. Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky and its zone of attraction

The port of Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky is expected to be a free port<sup>15</sup>. It will provide additional economic preferences for carriers. Development of Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky port as a part of the NSR and its inclusion into the NATL opens exclusive opportunities for international shipping.

Russia is mostly considered as an exporter of raw materials. Now we have an opportunity to become one of the key players in global trade, production and traffic flows, become the link between global production center (APR) and world centre of consumption (Europe). Establishment of the National Arctic Transportation Line is an important part of the new geopolitical situation in the world.

## References

1. Zbarashhenko V.S. Strategicheskie transportnye koridory Rossii. *Morskie vesti Rossii*. 2013, vyp. №5.
2. Aleksandrova M. A., Severnyj morskoy put: Osnovnye problemy i perspektivy razvitiya. *Infrastrukturnye otrasli ekonomiki: problemy i perspektivy razvitiya* 2014. №5
3. *Nauchno-tekhnicheskie problemy osvoeniya Arktiki*. Nauchnaja sessia Obshhego sobraniya chlenov RAN 16.12.2014. Moskva: Nauka, 2015.
4. Dr. Chang. Route Planning and Cost Analysis for Travelling through the Arctic Northeast Passage // *International Journal of Geographical Information Science*. 2015. 12-Mar. P.1—47.

<sup>14</sup> Several agreements on reconstruction and development of the ports of the region, which include a big modernization of port Petropavlovsk-Kamchatskiy, were signed by the Government of Kamchatskiy kray, Federal agency for sea and river transport, FGUP «Rosmorport», JSC «Petropavlovsk-Kamchatskiy morskoy trgovyj port» with the investment forum «Dalnij Vostok-2014».

<sup>15</sup> Proekt Federalnogo zakona. URL: <https://www.oprf.ru/1449/2133/1537/2192/newsitem/31736> (Accessed: 24 March 2016)

UDC 304.44

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.41

## What problems people of the Berezovo village of the Khanty-Mansiisk Autonomous District — Yugra consider the major<sup>1</sup>



© **Evgeny E. Plisetsky**, Candidate of Geographical Sciences, Deputy Director of the Institute for Regional Studies and Urban Planning of the National Research Institution “Higher School of Economics”.

Tel.: +7 (495) 772 95 90 ext. 222 01. E-mail: [epliseckij@hse.ru](mailto:epliseckij@hse.ru)

**Abstract.** The expedition to the village of Berezovo of the Berezovsky district of the Khanty-Mansiisk Autonomous District — Yugra, held on 6—8 of June 2015, became part of a large research project “Governance, Community and Ecology: Responding to Challenges of Resource Development in the Circumpolar North”. Its purpose was to study current trends and prospects for sustainable development of certain Arctic areas to ensure balanced economic development, preserve the unique natural ecological system, way of life of indigenous peoples and the existing system of regional and municipal management of these processes. The expedition took place with the support and involvement of the Administration of the Khanty-Mansiisk — Ugra and Berezovsky area<sup>2</sup>.

**Keywords:** *sustainable development, Arctic ecosystems, municipal management, economic development, Arctic settlements*

Analysis of the main socio-economic indicators of the AZRF subjects shows that a high share of regions with a significant proportion of the total mining, these regions are characterized by low rates of population, low number of employed, low retail trade turnover, small amount of new housing, low rates of agricultural production, etc. The most important direction of the AZRF development should be a balanced system of spatial development based on urban settlements.

Key measures of the AZRF development are frame-cluster approach, establishment of team development zones, selective public policy development. Urban settlements are the outposts of mastering the Arctic territories. The specificity of the urban areas is due to the peculiarities of the geographical situation, hard climate, low transport accessibility and social and economic problems.

One of the objectives of the survey is a study of current trends and characteristics of the population in the North, level of social satisfaction among the local residents. In the course of the study,

<sup>1</sup> The research is done within the framework of the McArthur Foundation sponsorship No.13-105059-000-INP “Governance, Community and Ecology: Responding to Challenges of Resource Development in the Circumpolar North” (2014—2015).

<sup>2</sup> Participants of the expedition: project leader PhD, Institute for regional studies and city planning Carol Scott Leonard; PhD, director of the Institute Irina Ilina; Candidate of science, deputy director Evgeny Plisetsky; Candidate of science, leading expert of the Institute Sergey Golubchikov (14.08.1960 — 19.10.2015); BEAR adviser on environmental Tuuli Hanna Päivikki Ojala; producer of the movie Aleksandr Marchenko.

it was necessary to understand how the measures taken by the authorities help to solve economic, social and environmental problems, how the changes are assessed by the local population.

During the expedition, we collected 13 questionnaires completed by the members of public sector (education, culture, social services, community service, and fire protection) and consumer market. National composition of respondents is characterized by a predominance of Russian population — 61%; 23% of respondents were Khanty, 8% — Mansi, 8% — Ukrainians. The sample is generally consistent with the structure of the national composition of the population. According to the data from the 14<sup>th</sup> of October 2010, the total population amounted to 7 939 people; Russians — 4 794 people (60%), and Khanty — 980 people (12%). All the residents interviewed said that they spoke only Russian. One man said that he could speak the local language, but he did it rare.

*What problems are slowing down the development of local self-government?* The majority of respondents (more than 15%) outline the following four problems, namely: low skilled workforce; low quality and availability of services, including social services; lack of infrastructure development; the formation of the local budget.

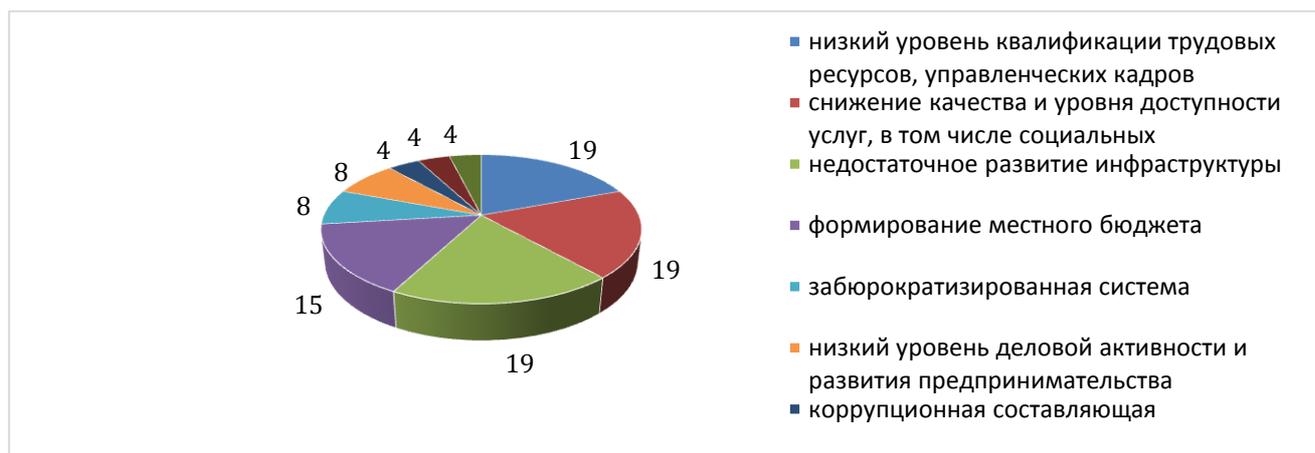


Figure 1. The share of answers about major problems that slow down the development of the local self-government, %

Thus, we see that the population is primarily worried about the status of the areas they closely interact in everyday life. Qualification of workers in the social sphere and public services directly determine the quality of life in a city, village, etc.; the quality of roads, communication systems determine the level of connectivity of remote territory with major economic centres. The quality of the budget affects the possibilities for immediate solutions to the most pressing issues within the competence of the local government.

Among the most effective ways to address these problems, they pointed out: administrative activities (clear powers and responsibilities of the various services, reducing the number of necessary approvals, training sessions and seminars for public-sector workers), sociological activities (the study of the current needs of the local population) and economic activities (favourable conditions for po-

tential investors). When answering the question: *How to solve these problems?* — 54% of respondents said about the need to utilize the financial mechanisms, 46% — institutional mechanisms.

Currently, all respondents pointed out, the degree of public participation in addressing municipal issues is generally passive. This response suggests a relatively low level of self-organization of the local population, the weak development of public organizations. Residents prefer not to participate and do not exercise their citizenship in order to address the most pressing and urgent problems.

When answering the question about *the demographic situation in the past decade*, the majority of respondents (over 75%) showed its decline. Rosstat's data analysis showed that in 2010—2015, population decline had occurred: the population reduced from 7 939 people to 7 777. The settlement has negative migration gain that in 2014 amounted to 138%. Today in the village, according to its residents, there are certain problems with employment. Opinions on that differ slightly. Only 15% of respondents said they had not seen problems with employment. More than 85% of respondents said about low wages in the public sector and job cuts.

The main directions of improving municipal management identified better qualifications of labour; removal of corruption due to tightening responsibility; elected chief of the local administration that is local him or herself; more active development of strategic planning.

*The prevailing type of relations between the authorities and business:* more than 70% of respondents rated at 2-3 points on a 5-mark scale. Therefore, they indicated a rather difficult situation in the village (Fig.2). It is worth mentioning here as well as a weak awareness of implemented programmes and forms of interaction between the business community and the local administration. In 2011 administration of the Berezovsky district, Ugra Foundation, the “District business incubator”, Ugra Foundation of microfinance and Investment Development Assistance Fund of Khanty-Mansisky Autonomous District signed the joint agreement on business-trainings.

*A question about the relationship between the local population (indigenous people) and business:* 15% of respondents reported about violations of the traditional land use of indigenous peoples. People named illegal fishing and hunting.

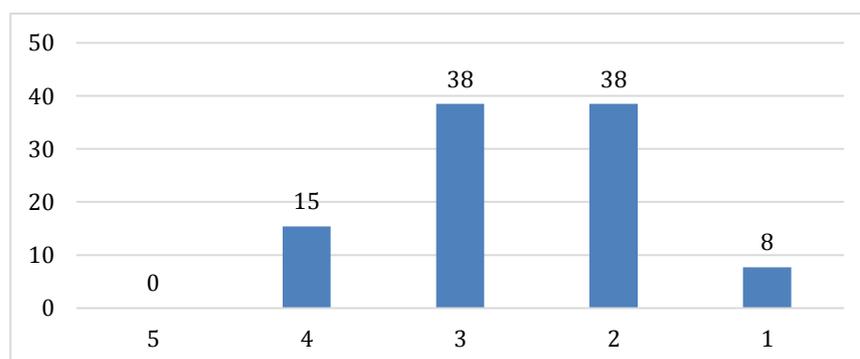


Figure 2. Share of responds about relationships between local authorities and business, %

Assessing the prevailing socio-economic development trends, the majority of respondents were more pessimistic. More than 70% of response data capture a certain slowing development of individual spheres of society. The largest proportion of pessimistic responses was given about the development of agriculture, social sphere and municipal management.

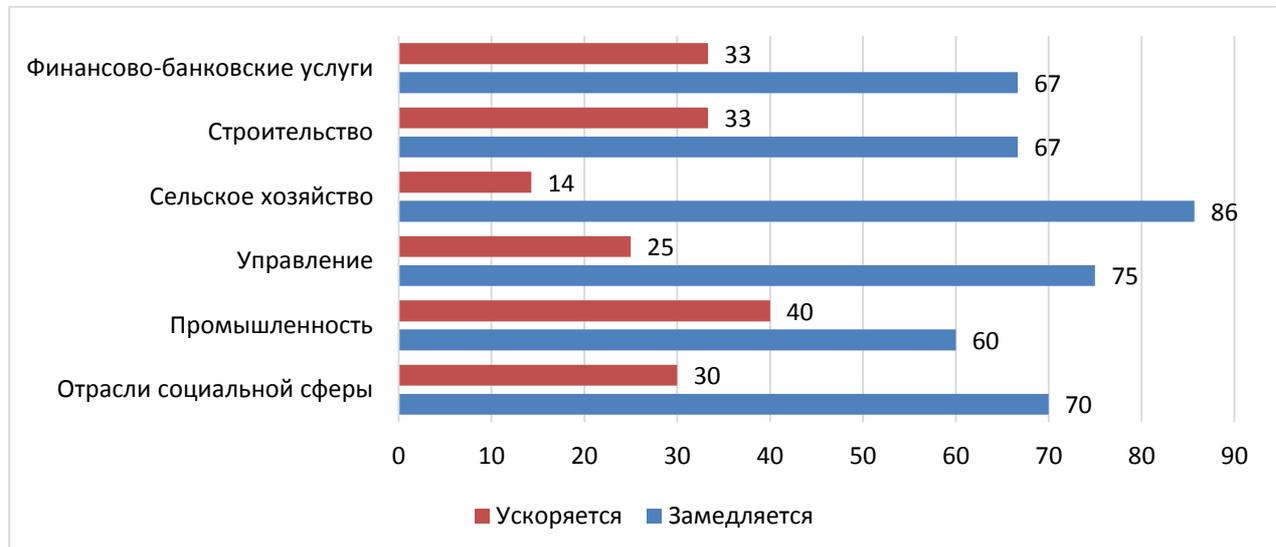


Figure 3. Share of responses on socio-economic development, %

According to most respondents, there is a need for more specific policies aimed at revitalizing economic activity. At the same time, a priority for the next 2-3 years will be maintaining the current level of development and the maintenance to prevent the reduce of the social and economic level.

*Are you connected to the Internet?* The answer was given only by a half of all respondents. They confirmed its presence, and about 60% use the Internet frequently. At the same time, all respondents noted the extremely low speed of the Internet connection.

Responses to the question about existing problems in the development of public infrastructure in the municipality showed that problems exist in all proposed for responses industries, starting from the actual technical condition of the infrastructure, and ending up with the quality of service delivery.

One of the major problems of the socio-economic development at the settlement is poor accessibility of the territory. This is largely due to the high costs. The cost of the road construction, for example, in the Berezovsky district is 2 times higher than the cost of a road on the "big land. One kilometer of a road is two-three times more expensive than in Sverdlovsk oblast and the South of Ugra. Some years ago, various transport schemes to link Berezovo and the "mainland" had been done but got no further implementation<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> V Yugre poyavitsya novaya «doroga zhizni» // Parlamentskaya gazeta «Tyumenskie izvestiya». №120 (5562). URL: <http://old.t-i.ru/article/23659/> (Accessed: 07 March 2016).

Among the housing problems, the respondents noted the poor quality of services, including those related to poor utilities. These conclusions have been confirmed by the official statistics, when the infrastructure replacement rates remain extremely low.

Table 1

*Selected indicators of the development of municipal infrastructure and housing*

Indicator	Measurement	2012	2013	2014
A single stretch of street gas network	meter	90 440	90 440	90 440
A single stretch of street gas network in need of replacement and repair	meter	12000	12000	11 899
The length of heat and steam networks in double-tube terms	meter	18 390	18 390	18 390
The length of heat and steam networks in double-tube terms, requiring replacement	meter	6 760	5 200	4 491
The length of heat and steam networks, which have been replaced or repaired during the reporting year	meter	918	600	709
A single stretch of street mains	meter	16 541	13 460	13 400
A single stretch of street mains to be replaced	meter	6 400	2 200	1 750
A single stretch of street mains, which replaced and repaired during the reporting year	meter	603	600	460
A single stretch of street sewers	meter	3 500	3 500	3 500
A single stretch of street sewers in need of replacement	meter	500	1 600	1 600
The number living in dilapidated homes	man	1 136	793	793
The number living in unsafe homes	man	0	178	178
Relocated from dilapidated and emergency homes, people	man	150	44	44

Transport complex problems are related to the use of old equipment and technology and poor quality of roads. The building complex has problems with poor quality constructions and unfair work contractors. According to statistics, the rate of commissioning of new housing reduced significantly.



Figure 4. Building and housing construction sector

Consumer market development is hampered by recurrent food shortages due to poorly developed transport schemes and high food prices. At the same time, statistics say about the growth of the trade areas in 2012—2014: shops from 3 622 m<sup>2</sup> to 4 438 m<sup>2</sup>; pavilions from 1 556 m<sup>2</sup> to 2 210 m<sup>2</sup>, etc. In the field of environmental security, the problem of weak environmental controls and a lack of environmental organizations are particularly relevant. In case of telecommunications — poor communication and the Internet.

Social infrastructure development is constrained by the low level of health personnel; weak support from local and regional authorities of educational institutions; the low quality of health services, and reduction in the number of sports sections for adults; the lack of attention to the development of culture, leisure and tour activities. Culture is largely funded by the municipality and the districts (Department of culture of Khanty-Mansi Autonomous District — Yugra). They are funding the development of librarianship, additional educational programmes at art school, purchasing the musical instruments and literature. Distance is a challenge when attracting qualified personnel. Young people leave the village of Berezovo and move to Khanty-Mansiysk and other big cities. The main purpose of various cultural events is to raise attractiveness of the settlement and to involve more people<sup>4</sup>.

Responding to a question about the need of ethnological and ecological expertise of the municipal projects, more than 70% of the respondents gave positive answer (Fig.5).



Figure 5. Share of respondents who consider ethnological and ecological expertise necessary, %

Assessing the environmental changes for the past 5 years, more than 55% of respondents reported about environmental problems in the area (Fig. 6).

<sup>4</sup> Reshenie Dumy Beryozovskogo rajona Xanty-Mansijskogo avtonomnogo okruga — Yugry № 477 ot 14 avgusta 2014 g. «Ob utverzhdenii Strategii socialno-ekonomicheskogo razvitiya Berezovskogo rajona do 2020 goda i na period do 2030 goda».



Figure 6. Share of respondents assessed the state of the environment for the part 5 years, %

One of the negative factors affecting the environment is the lack of an efficient system for the MSW. The majority of respondents indicated that waste is stockpiled (partially buried) without sorting and reprocessing. Among the most pressing environmental challenges, respondents named surface water contamination and depletion of biological resources (problems got the lowest score). Their cause is common — lack of environmental management and environmental control. It is partly proved by statistics: in 2013—2014 removal of MSW reduced from 17.6 to 14.3 thousand m<sup>3</sup><sup>5</sup>. The least serious problems, according to residents of the village, are air pollution and inadequate ecological education of the population.



Figure 7. Most important ecological problems, overall assessment based on respondents' answers (1—7 points, 1 — the most serious, 7 — the least serious)

The loss of biodiversity would have an effect on the quality of life of the local population. According to the survey, local products (fish, meat, berries) are 10—50% of the everyday diet.

<sup>5</sup> Базы данных показателей муниципальных образований. URL: <http://www.gks.ru/dbscripts/munst/munst.htm> (Accessed: 07 March 2016).

The majority of respondents noted changes in climate, weather instability and warming that lead to the gradual decrease in the level of many rivers, the emergence of new, more southern species.

When answering the question about the regional programme for the development of ecological and ethnographic tourism, interviewees' opinions divided. Some of them say that such a programme exists and its implementation is hampered by poor infrastructure caused by the harsh climate and poor transport accessibility of the territory. In addition, respondents noted the lack of interest of the authorities to this area. Although there is a weak awareness of the population on the existing priorities of the state, regional and municipal policy in the area, making tourism an important task of developing the economy of Khanty-Mansi Autonomous District.

Nevertheless, respondents noted the development of ethnographic and ecological tourism as a promising economic activity. In the course of the questioning, we had an interview with the Director of the tourist and ethnographic complex "Sorny Sei" Olga Konstantinovna Filippova. The tourist complex is located 10 km from the village Berezovo. Olga moved to Berezovsky district in the early 2000-ies from Baikal. She told us about the ideas to build a tourist complex: "we were going to villages and observing rather bad social conditions; the area was remote, situated far from the civilization; not everyone can leave, sell piece of something and earn a bit <...> and I got idea to unite all of our local masters and to make traditional souvenir production. If someone knows how to do something, some crafts and can produce something, give us, and we show it at different exhibitions in Moscow and other cities, where these things are also sold". Later, the handicraft camp was established for children (July 18, 2010). It hosts children during the holidays and in summer [3]. Workers at "Sorny Sei" are mainly the Khanty and Mansi people. Foreign tourists visit "Sorny Sei". In addition, they organize training within the framework of the Russian-Canadian program NORDEP.

Respondents found it difficult to assess the level of international cooperation. With regard to the nature of the relationship between the visiting tourists and the local population, they spoke very positively.

### **Conclusion**

Among the measures to improve the environmental situation in the area respondents proposed: to increase the level of ecological education; to construct waste recycling enterprises, to improve the operation of the landfill; to monitor the activities of oil companies; to held subbotniks; to reconstruct and upgrade the sewage treatment plants.

Key issues outlined by the survey are the following:

1. The principal obstacle to the development of the northern settlements is reducing the motivation of municipal authorities, the shortage of qualified and motivated personnel.
2. Limited accessibility affects business.

3. The problem of retention of the person in the set (existing) conditions.

4. To increase the value of public infrastructure, form the town environment and the image of urban settlement in the eyes of its residents and visitors.

5. Lack of principles and mechanisms of public finances management; to link the expenditure of budgetary funds with measurable social and meaningful results.

6. Provide funding for public infrastructure development, primarily through the regional budget.

7. Among the priorities is public infrastructure and its elements allocated to educational and medical institutions, reconstruction of municipal and transportation infrastructure.

8. Development of public infrastructure does not always have to focus on the alignment of the density and the quality of the basic infrastructures and increase access to social services (the validity of norms).

### References

1. Bolshanik P. V. Urovni antropogennoj nagruzki i ekologo-geograficheskoe rajonirovanie territorii XMAO-Yugry. *Vestn. Tom. gos. un-ta*. 2008. №317.
2. Vaver O. Yu. Analiz resursnogo potenciala formirovaniya regionalnoj territorialnoj rekreacionnoj sistemy Xanty-Mansijskogo avtonomnogo okruga — Yugry. *Vestnik NVGU*. 2009. №4.
3. Golubchikov S.N., Pliseckij E.E., Khetagurova V.Sh. Perspektivy razvitiya etnograficheskogo turizma v Arktike (na primere Beryozovskogo rajona Khanty-Mansijskogo avtonomnogo okruga). *Sovremennye problemy servisa i turizma*. 2015. T. 9. № 4. pp. 72—78.

UDC [332.14+338.2](985)

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.52

## Mission in the strategic territory management (example of the Solovetsky Archipelago)



© **Alexander Y. Tsvetkov**, Candidate of Economics, Associate Professor of the Management Department, Higher School of Economics and Management, Northern (Arctic) Federal University named after M.V. Lomonosov. Priority themes of research: strategic management, territory marketing, sustainable development of northern specially protected territories, tourism and its place in social and economic development of the region, regional ecological marketing. Tel: +7-950-963-0929. E-mail: narfu29@gmail.com

**Abstract.** The article is devoted to the main aspects of the territory mission development in the context of strategic management of the territory. The paper shows

the role and importance of the mission in the management of the territory and reflects the main issues and the principles of its formation. Using the example of the Solovetsky Archipelago the author analyzes the mission, gives recommendations for its improvement and provides the model of the Solovetsky archipelago mission development.

**Keywords:** *territory mission, strategic management, development of the mission, territory marketing, Solovetsky Archipelago*

The mission is a key element of strategic management of the territory. It defines the strategic orientations and creates a reliable basis for setting goals and strategies for the development of the territory.

In scientific literature, the mission of the territory has no wide reflection. The notion of “mission” is considered with regard to the organization's mission. Scholars Vihanskij O.S. and Naumov A. I. point out that “in the case of a broader understanding of the mission it could be seen as a statement of philosophy and purpose, the *raison d'être* of the organization” [1].

If we choose a territory as an object of strategic management (region, province, city, specially protected area), the mission would also reflect the main sense and purpose of this territory: “what is the role of the territory in the economic, social, political, technological, and cultural development? What are the benefits of the population? What does it give for the development of the Russian Federation and the world in General?” The answers to these questions will help us to define the mission. It should be noted that the mission of each territory is unique simply because we consider the competitive advantages and features of a particular territory.

Currently, some attempts have been made to determine the missions of territories within the framework of strategic management. Territorial marketing researcher Alexander Pankruhin [4] notes:

“in most cases, the mission is still confused with the slogan and brand-image, labeling them basically for an effect”, i.e. almost meaningless and useless. Therefore, at the Sochi international investment forum many Russian regions had slogans like “Ryazan is the soul of Russia”, “Gelendzhik is a city of my dreams”, etc. However, in this publication, the author’s focus is on positive examples of defining missions: “quite another matter — the mission of the distant from the capital and from Europe, but advanced area of Yuzhno-Sakhalinsk. In a town development strategy, the islanders identified their mission quite tangibly: “formation of administrative, cultural and business Russian-Japanese Center in the Far East that works for the integration between the two countries. The city motto looks also good: “shaping new relations between Russia and Japan” [4].

Strategic management of the territory includes the following milestones: 1) defining a mission of the territory; 2) setting goals for its development; 3) formulating strategies and developing plans; 4) practise the development strategy of the territory; 5) monitoring and evaluation of its effectiveness. The implementation of each phase should be prefaced by a comprehensive integrated analysis of factors needed for the development of the territory. Thus, the definition of the mission is a determining step and it depends on the efficiency of strategic management of the territory.

The mission should reflect the specific features of the territory, its competitive advantages and the potential for development of the territory. The mission of protected areas should be directed to the preservation, study and balanced development of the unique natural, historical and cultural, spiritual resources and values of the territory in favour of the future generations with a focus on a long-term sustainable development.

The main difficulty in developing the mission is, firstly, the need for a thorough analysis of the internal and external factors, affecting the development of the territory; secondly, demanding a concise mission statement; thirdly, the compulsory separation of the mission, goals and strategies for the development of the territory. You should not mix and replace these concepts: mission defines the meaning and assignment of territories; the objectives define the desired results of its development, and indicates the direction and goals of the strategy.

Arkhangelsk Region Government Decree No. 310-RP July 16, 2013 approved the Solovetsky Archipelago development strategy as a unique object of spiritual, historical, cultural and natural heritage, and defined the mission of the Solovetsky Archipelago. According to the document: "the Mission of the Solovetsky Archipelago in the world today is to provide a revival, preservation and adequate perception of traditional values in Russian and world communities; to serve the formation of highly educated, morally-oriented, creative, socially responsible individuals. The legacy of Solovki in all its uniqueness and multi-component nature helps to keep the life orientations and values of an-

cestors, a people characterized by a holistic worldview, high spiritual and moral qualities, great creative potential, tremendous resilience, high civil sense and ability to unite”<sup>1</sup>.

Next is the statement: “the Mission of the Solovetsky archipelago is also ensuring decent living conditions for the local population”<sup>2</sup>. In our opinion, this supplement increasingly refers not to the mission but to the most important strategic objectives of the development of the Solovetsky Archipelago, capable of realizing the mission. It is the capacity of the local population that should be used for the implementation of the strategy and mission of the Solovetsky Archipelago.

In the monograph “Upgrade mechanism for sustainable rural development”, published by the Russian Academy of natural sciences in 2014 [3], the importance of strategic management mechanisms in the development of the territory was highlighted and indicated that the mission was one of the central points of the development of socio-economic development strategy. According to the authors of the monograph: “the mission primary purpose characterizes the rural territories, the goal of existence for the inhabitants to the outside world, in historical terms. It is integrating rural community being an important moment of awareness of corporatism and the main objectives of its existence. At the same time, the mission is a visit card of the countryside, brochure, designed to tell the most important features of its existence and development” [3].

The mission may be developed in two versions: 1) full global mission statement or the primary purpose (listed above); 2) short version the mission formulated as slogan, appeal, which can be used in marketing territory. The first version of the mission should be used in strategic management, territorial development, for investors, partners and others interested in the development of the territory. The second (short) version of the mission can be used at the web page, as an element of promotion and a brief statement about the appointment. Therefore, tourists could visit the Solovetsky Archipelago web page before going there. After a short reading of the mission, they should get a sense of respect to the heritage of the Solovetsky Archipelago.

To define the mission of the territory, one should undertake a comprehensive analysis of the factors of its development, for example, using SWOT-analysis, PEST-analysis, competitive analysis and other methods. When conducting a SWOT-analysis it should not only determine the strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats, but also it is needed to assess their influence, rank in order of importance or in determining the mission. Therefore, we use only the most important factors.

---

<sup>1</sup> Rasporyazhenie Pravitelstva Arhangelskoj oblasti ot 16 iyulya 2013 g. № 310-rp «O Strategii razvitiya Soloveckogo arhipelaga kak unikalnogo obekta duhovnogo, istoriko-kulturnogo i prirodnogo naslediya». URL: <http://my-solovki.ru/doc/310.doc> (Accessed: 20 February 2016).

<sup>2</sup> Ibid.

In case of Solovetsky Archipelago, in our opinion: *the greatest strength* is a unique complex spiritual, historical, cultural and natural heritage; *the weakest point* — the inefficiency of the system and strategic management at various levels, including the implementation of the strategic development programmes; *a key feature* is the improvement of strategic management and establishment of an effective system of governance by overcoming the existing contradictions between the key actors, to ensure a balanced development of the territory; and *the main threat* — a threat of destruction of the unique architectural and natural monuments of the Solovetsky Archipelago. Monitoring of reconstruction and exploitation of monuments done by the state and international organizations (UNESCO) should ensure the removal of the threat.

It should be noted that, while conducting a SWOT-analysis of the Solovetsky Archipelago there is no clear delineation on the internal factors of development (strengths and weaknesses) and external potential development factors (opportunities and threats) as internal and external. They are not only closely linked, but also interdependent. Thus, the strategic management of the Solovetsky Archipelago is mainly external. The Ministry of Culture of the Russian Federation, the Government of Arkhangelsk region, Russian Orthodox Church, and others do it.

Development of the mission may be carried out on the model of “need — can — want” and using the axes (fig. 1) [2].

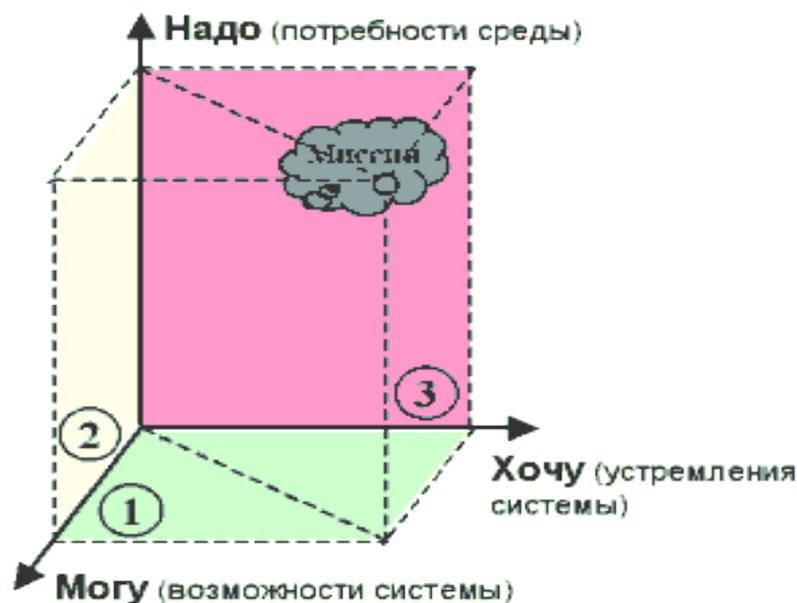


Figure 1. How to develop a mission

The axis “need” reflects the needs of community, the axis of “can” – system capabilities, the axis “want” — aspirations of the system. We are considering these options in relation to the territory of the Solovetsky Archipelago (tab. 1).

Table 1

*Mission development model of the Solovetsky archipelago*

Parameter	Parameter	Drillthrough setting	
"Need"	Needs of the community	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Spiritual development.</li> <li>2. Cultural development and tolerance.</li> <li>3. Strengthening national identity.</li> <li>4. Scientific research.</li> <li>5. Education, communications.</li> <li>6. The study of nature, history, culture, architecture, archaeology, etc.</li> <li>7. Recreation, recreation.</li> <li>8. Comfortable conditions of pilgrimage and tourism.</li> <li>9. Physical and social security of stay on the territory.</li> </ol>	<b>THE MISSION OF THE SOLOVETSKY ARCHIPELAGO</b>
«Can»	Opportunities Of the territory	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unique spiritual, historical and cultural, natural resources.</li> <li>2. The current monastery.</li> <li>3. Excursion service.</li> <li>4. Pilgrimage and tourist infrastructure (hotels, catering, transportation, etc.).</li> <li>5. Organization of scientific conferences, research, various events, publishing literature.</li> <li>6. Infrastructure for living of the local population (residential, social, domestic and medical care, transportation, communications, etc.).</li> <li>7. Implementation of federal and regional programmes for the development of the territory.</li> <li>8. The availability of highly qualified personnel (scientists, researchers, managers, tour guides, etc.).</li> <li>9. Information Security (information materials, books, Internet sites, etc.).</li> </ol>	
«Want»	The goal of the territory	<p>The strategy of the Solovetsky archipelago identified 3 key strategic objectives [1]:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Effective conservation of spiritual, cultural and natural heritage of the Solovetsky Archipelago.</li> <li>2. Harnessing the potential of the Solovetsky heritage for spiritual, moral, and cultural influences on Russian and world community.</li> <li>3. Creating decent conditions for work, everyday life and social life of the population of the Solovetsky archipelago.</li> </ol>	

In addition to the mission, specified in the Development strategy of the Solovetsky archipelago, we recommend that one also develops a summary version of the mission using the presented model. The short version of the mission could be formulated taking into account three parameters: external needs,

opportunities and development of the territory itself. In determining the short version of the mission of the Solovetsky archipelago, it is necessary to reconcile the interests of the various actors: 1) the Federal and municipal authorities; 2) The Solovetsky monastery; 3) Solovki State historical, architectural and natural museum-reserve; 4) local population; 5) business community; 6) scientific community; 7) other development organizations, such as the Solovki branch of "Arhoblenergo", Solovki forestry, etc.

The actors should develop common approaches to the strategic territory management of the Solovetsky Archipelago. One example of such an integrated approach on the Solovetsky Islands: the principle of "five keys" proposed by the Agency for the development of the Solovetsky Archipelago. The principle means close collaboration in decision-making between the regional government, Primorsky District, rural settlement Solovki, Solovetsky male monastery and Solovetsky state historical architectural and natural museum-reserve. In our view, this principle could be supplemented by compulsory harmonization of decisions with the representatives of the scientific community, business and local population.

Thus, the mission of the territory reveals the main purpose of the territory, reflects the interests, goals and capacity of key actors, who intend to implement this mission through the implementation of the objectives and development strategies.

## References

1. Vihanskij O.S., Naumov A.I. *Menedzhment*. M.: Ekonomist, 2015. p. 227.
2. Gorelik S. *Biznes-inzhiniring i missiya kompanii*. URL: <http://www.interface.ru/fset.asp?Url=/misc/bizinj.htm> (Accessed: 26 February 2016).
3. Kovalenko E.G., Polushkina T.M., Yakimova O.Yu., Avtajkina E.V., Zajceva O.O., Sedova K.S. *Modernizaciya mekhanizma ustojchivogo razvitiya selskih territorij*: URL: <http://www.rae.ru/monographs/247-7384> (Accessed: 20 February 2016).
4. Pankruhin A. *Marketing territorij rossijskih regionov: lica, obrazy i pozicii*. URL: [http://mba.rea.ru/Main.aspx?page=Pankruhin\\_marketing\\_territor\\_rus](http://mba.rea.ru/Main.aspx?page=Pankruhin_marketing_territor_rus) (Accessed: 20 February 2016).

## ARCTIC TOURISM IN RUSSIA

UDC 338.48

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.59

### The natural tourist potential of the islands in the western sector of the Russian Arctic



© **Natalia M. Byzova**, Candidate of Geographical Sciences, Associate Professor, Head of the Department of Geography and Hydrometeorology, Institute of Natural Sciences and Technology of the Northern (Arctic) Federal University named after M.V. Lomonosov. E-mail: bnmgeo@yandex.ru

**Abstract.** The islands of the archipelago of Franz Josef Land and Novaya Zemlya of the western sector of the Russian Arctic are very promising for the organization of the Arctic sea cruises. They have the unique natural landscapes and diverse flora and fauna. The Arctic holds half of the species of shore birds in the world. In summer, the Novaya Zemlya is full of *Branta leucopsis* and *Branta bernicla* and occasionally there are tundra swans, white-fronted goose, eider ducks and loons. The archipelago has spherulites — one of the mysterious formations in the Arctic, they are perfectly round stone balls from a few centimeters to several meters in diameter.

**Keywords:** *tourism, Franz Josef Land, Novaya Zemlya, landscapes, flora, fauna*

The Arctic is one of the remote regions of the Earth with the unique natural landscapes. The attractiveness of the Arctic is in vast ice fields, icebergs, incredible silence, and ability to observe marine animals in their natural habitat. Fans of extreme sports come here to relive the unforgettable and exciting adventures, get new knowledge about the unique natural phenomena and processes. The attractiveness of the Arctic holds a great promise for the development of Arctic tourism. The Arctic islands are the main attractions, especially the archipelagos of Franz Josef Land and Novaya Zemlya in the western sector of the Russian Arctic. Since ancient times this areas hve been attended by fishers in search of fish and marine animals and sailors in search of a North-east passage, Russian and foreign scientific expeditions to study the natural resource potential of the Arctic lands. Currently, the Arctic islands have become attractive to tourists.

The coast of the islands in the western sector of the Russian Arctic have unique natural formations, cultural and historical objects are very promising for maritime Arctic cruises. Geological and geomorphological features are one of the leading characteristics of their natural complexes. Relief is regarded as a condition and as a resource when exploring tourism potential. It makes the territory attractive for tourism. Untypical landform are especially interesting for tourists [1].

Islands in the western sector of the Russian Arctic are the result of a long and complex geological development. The complexity of their structure is explained by their location in the marginal part of the young and actively developing Arctic Ocean. Franz Josef land is situated within the polar shelf-margin orogenic belt on the border the Barents-Kara plate and the ocean. The archipelago and its 192 islands are located in the Barents Sea. It is the northernmost land of Russia and Eurasia. On the Island of Rudolf there is the northernmost island point of Russia — Cape Fligeli. The height of most of the islands does not exceed 500 m above sea level and the highest point is on the Wiener-Neishtadt Island (620 m), the glacier surface — on Zemlya Viltcheka (735 m). Plate surface of the islands experienced the devastating effects of glaciers that lead to the establishment of the glacial relief forms. More than 85% of the surface of the Franz Josef Land Archipelago is covered with ice of a mainland origin. Shores of the islands are very steep, sometimes they represent glacial cliffs [2, p. 185—186].

Novaya Zemlya is the northern part of the Urals-Novayazemlya fold system. It is the largest Arctic Archipelago between the Barents and the Kara seas. It consists of two large islands Severnyi and Yuzhnyi and dozens of smaller islands. In the South, the strait Karskie Vorota separates them from the Vaigatch Island. The relief of the Severnyi Island is not heterogeneous, with average high mountains, almost completely buried under Noveozemelsky Glacier. Mountains stretch along the island, close to the coast. On the Yuzhnyi Island you will see Sedov's Peak rising (1 115 m). North from it, the height of the mountains increases up to 1 590 m. Near the northern part of the island mountains decrease to 1000m and even up to 500 m.

The lower part of the steep slopes is covered with talus. Mountain valleys are filled with glaciers. High ridges and sharp peaks separate them from each other. The areas with weaker plots have less height and surface platopodibna. Coastal glacial and abrasion plains ledge down to the terraced flat coastal plain, folded by marine sediments with sloping, small dismembered coast. Ice coasts are quite variable. In the south of the Severnyi Island, you can see fjords and steep marginal coasts with a height up to 100 meters [2, p. 353—354].

Platopodibna staggered upland of the Franz Josef Land, medium mountains, hilly plateau and the coastal lowlands of the Severnyi Island of the Novaya Zemlya Archipelago are very attractive for tourists. Of particular importance are its unique geological and geomorpho-environmental objects. The lack of vegetation on the ice-free coast Islands let us see stratitopical, stratigraphical and palaeontological cuts from various periods, which are valuable sources of information about the development of natural processes. They reflect the main stages of geological and tectonic development of the territory and various forms of relief of the island coastlines.

Residual intrusive landforms, stone balls — sferolits are very attractive to tourists. Sferolits are one of the mysterious Arctic entities, perfectly round stone ball with a diameter of few centimeters to several meters. They are found on the islands of Franz Josef Land, but they are especially diverse on the Champ Island.

Great attraction have marginal, cumulative, icy Arctic coast. Coasts folded within loose rocks, easy to wash and thermoerosium. Such a coastline rapidly changes its configuration. Coasts with the accumulative type of development are characterized by accumulation of sediments and formation of various terraces, forelands and rerashes.

On the islands of the Franz Josef Land Archipelago, numerous columnar basalt separate outputs could be seen. Often they are located on the tops of the Islands (Champ, Northbrook, Hooker), forming sheets of basalts. On a number of islands, the columnar basalts occur near the water line, forming a unique coastline. For example, the coastline on the Zemlya Aleksandry Island. When going up to the surface, the bedrocks are subjected to destruction with the formation of the block piles, “stone chaos” and moving on to a scattering of stones. They are crushed to rubble and form smooth low-lying coastal plains. In their slides various Arctic plant communities appear.

Lonely standing rock Rubini in the Tihaya Bay of the Hooker Island also represents gigantic logout basalts. In contrast to the coast of the island of Zemlya Aleksandry, here large-, medium-, and small separates of basalts are chaotically spread; they descend to the water line, forming a step-like coastline, actively deconstructed by the sea surf. Unique geological and geographical formations could be regarded as a valuable natural tourism resource. Their number could be counted per unit area or length of coast [3, p. 92—114].

The climatic conditions and the radiation balance that depends on latitude and location play a significant role in the tourist attractiveness of the territory. Franz Josef Land and Novaya Zemlya are situated in the Arctic and subarctic climate zones and have low temperatures even in summer. An icy, snow-covered surfaces and domination of Arctic air masses have a great influence on weather conditions. Cyclones coming from the Atlantic Ocean cause the highest winter temperatures, maximum cloudiness, precipitation, drastic shifts in weather, strong winds and frequent fogs and high relative humidity. For example, Novozemelskaya Bora or a strong wind is able to reach a speed of 60 m /s occupies a special place.

Climatic conditions had a significant impact on the comfort of the Arctic tourism, since the thermal regime affects the thermal sensation of a person. The Arctic islands have unfavourable climatic conditions for tourism not only in winter, but also in summer. Steady change of the average daily air temperature over 0°C to positive values at Novaya Zemlya and Franz Josef Land is

marked in June, and at the end of August. At the beginning of September, the average daily temperature becomes a negative value. Warm period with average temperatures 2-3° C on Franz Josef land lasts only 40-60 days and 80-115 days on the Novaya Zemlya Islands. Stable snow cover is formed by 2<sup>nd</sup>-3<sup>rd</sup> decades of September. The duration of snow time is up to 300 days per year [2, p. 9—39]. Only the use of comfortable cruise liners smooths the environmental conditions in the Arctic and landing in such areas get their special extremity.

North of the Arctic Circle, the change of polar day and polar night is clearly expressed. On the islands of Franz Josef Land and Novaya Zemlya the sun does not set from April to August. The rest of the year here is the long polar night. Light comes only from the moon and auroras. In summer these area has clear weather and weak winds, clear and transparent atmosphere of the high seas. You can observe the refraction of light and mirages. Distant objects become visible from much greater distances than in normal conditions. They can be bigger than in reality or turn to rise above the surface. On the 20<sup>th</sup> of June 2012 at 10:30 pm, the vessel “Professor Molchanov” was passing along the coast of the Severniy Island of Novaya Zemlya Archipelago, between Bolshie Oranskie Islands and Bay of Anna, when the weather was clear and calm, the participants of the expedition observed the Arctic mirages.

Modern Western Arctic climate contributes to the formation glaciers on the islands of Franz Josef Land and Novaya Zemlya Archipelago. It is natural land ice of atmospheric origin. Franz Josef Land has covering glaciers mostly. On the Severnyi Island, land and mountain ice cover are usually found. Glaciers are unique natural formations and at the same time, they are very attractive for tourists because of their beauty and unusual forms. They create specific glacial landforms and unique glacial landscapes. At the seaside, the edge of the glaciers form icebergs of different colour: from bright green to dark blue. A large concentration of icebergs is observed in the Inostranceva Bay on the Severniy Island, where Pavlov’s Inostranceva glaciers slide. In addition, the water surface of the Arctic seas is covered with various types of sea ice. They are formed by freezing of seawater and are quite different from the river and inland ice. The presence of various species of sea ice significantly increases tourism attraction of marine areas.

The Arctic islands have no big rivers. The eyes of tourists could see only short, but fast flowing rivers or glacial waterfalls breaking away from steep glacial coasts up to 30 m high. Among similar icy Arctic landscapes, they are very attractive for tourists.

Landscape diversity of marine ice, cover glaciers, icebergs and the Arctic rivers form the unique Arctic tourism objects, allowing to treat them as factors influencing the formation of the

tourism potential of the Arctic territories. Their measure in assessing the natural tourism potential is their presence or absence per unit of area or the coast.

In the western sector of the Russian Arctic has two natural zones: the Arctic desert and tundra. Despite the cold Arctic summer, the surface gets a sufficient amount of solar radiation, which stimulates the growth and development of vegetation, especially the polygonal mochowolichenous group. The richest flora of bryophytes and lichen communities. For example, within the Franz Josef Land their amount is 120 and 114 species. Flora of vascular plants in this zone comprises with no more than 100 species and different domination grains, cruciferous, and Rosales. The top ten families make up 80% of the total flora [2, p. 9—39]. Diversity of flowering plants make these harsh lands colorful and attractive to tourists in summer.

The Arctic fauna is limited in species composition: polar bears, lemmings, and the Arctic fox. Among marine animals: only species strictly confined to the Arctic latitudes. Since the pre-glacier times, the Arctic fish inhabit the northern seas: polar shark, polar flounder, haddock, meet seals, walruses, beluga whales, narwhals and whales.

The Arctic holds half of the world shorebirds species. In spring, the Arctic islands are attended by many shorebirds typical for high latitudes. In summer on the Novaya Zemlya, you can see brent goose, tundra swan, white-fronted goose, eider and loon. Rocky Arctic islands are full of marine colonial birds. Gulls, guillemots, cephus form bird's bazaars here. Bolshie Oranskie Islands, located in 4 km north from Cape Carlsen, look like columnars with a common foundation. All eaves and ledges on steep rocky coasts are populated by islands' birds. Similar bird bazaars are also found on the Bogatyy Island in a Russkaya Harbour, at Cape Zhelaniya (Severniy Island of the Novaya Zemlya Archipelago), on a Rubini Rock in the Tihaya Bay on the Island of Hooker (Franz Josef Land). Many birds do not leave the Arctic, even in winter, wandering among the water ice of the Arctic seas. They are an important link between marine and land ecosystems. The Arctic plant communities and species are valuable objects for various tours waimed at teaching and shaping the ecological culture. In addition, they are very attractive objects from an aesthetic point of view.

### References

1. Byzova N.M., Smirennikova E.V. Faktory formirovaniya turisticeskogo potenciala arkticheskikh ostrovov v predelakh Arkhangel'skoj oblasti. *Vestnik SAFU. Seriya «Estestvennye nauki»*. 2012. № 3. pp. 5—9.
2. *Pomorskaya enciklopediya: v 5 t.* / gl. redaktor N.P. Laverov. T. II. *Priroda Arkhangel'skogo Severa*/gl. redaktor N.M. Byzova. Arkhangel'sk: PGU im. M.V. Lomonosova, 2007.
3. Byzova N.M. Geomorfologicheskie osobennosti beregovykh zon arkticheskikh morej. *Kompleksnaya nauchno-obrazovatel'naya ekspeditsiya "Arkticheskij plavuchij universitet-2013"*: v 2 ch. / otv. red. K.G. Bogolicyn; Sev. (Arktich.) feder. un-t. Arkhangel'sk: IPC SAFU, 2013. Ch. I. pp. 92—114.

UDC 338.48

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.66

## Ecological tourism in protected natural areas of the Russian Arctic: prospects and challenges



© **Elena I. Golubeva**, Doctor of Biological Sciences, Professor, Faculty of Geography, Moscow State University named after M.V. Lomonosov. E-mail: egolubeva@gmail.com

© **Nadezhda I. Tulskeya**, Candidate of Geographical Sciences, Senior Researcher, Faculty of Geography, Moscow State University named after M.V. Lomonosov. E-mail: tnadya@mail.ru

© **Maria V. Tsekina**, Candidate of Geographical Sciences, Research Associate, Faculty of Geography, Moscow State University named after M.V. Lomonosov. E-mail: mtsekina@list.ru



© **Natalia I. Kirasheva**, graduate student, Faculty of Geography, Moscow State University named after M.V. Lomonosov. E-mail: kirasheva@mail.ru

**Abstract.** The article focuses on the problems and prospects of the ecological tourism in the natural protected areas (NPA) in



the Russian Arctic. It is proposed to create a unified terminological basis for the concept of “ecotourism”. We analyzed the systemic problems that hinder the development of ecotourism in the NPA of the Arctic region. The article shows arising recreational conflicts, caused by environmental and traditional land use issues and the existence of NPA in the Arctic. We also discuss promising aspects of the ecological tourism, preservation of the heritage of indigenous peoples of the North and opportunities for involving local people in economic activities and environmental education.

**Keywords:** *Ecotourism, protected territories, the Arctic, recreational capacity, recreational, environmental, traditional land use, natural and cultural heritage, geographical factors*

According to the experts of the World Tourism Organization (UNWTO), share of ecotourism in the structure of the global tourist market is about 10-15%. It is one of the most perspective types of tourism. The Russian Federation has considerable potential for the development of ecotourism, but now it accounts for no more than 1% of the tourist market<sup>1</sup>. The foundation of the ecotourism in Russia is a developed network of specially protected natural territories (SPNT).

<sup>1</sup> Strategiya razvitiya turizma v Rosijskoj Federacii na period do 2020 goda. Utverzhdena rasporyazheniem Pra-vitelstva RF ot 31 maya 2014 g. №941-r. URL: [http://www.russiatourism.ru/data/File/news\\_file/2014//data/File/news\\_file/2014/Стратегия развития туризма в РФ на период до 20120 года Распоряжение Правительства РФ от 21.05.2014 № 941-p.pdf](http://www.russiatourism.ru/data/File/news_file/2014//data/File/news_file/2014/Стратегия развития туризма в РФ на период до 20120 года Распоряжение Правительства РФ от 21.05.2014 № 941-p.pdf) (Accessed: 18 March 2016)

Federal law identifies six categories of SPNT; three of them (nature conservation zones, national parks and natural parks) play the greatest role in the ecotourism planning and its activities.

### ***System problems of the ecological tourism development***

However, the development of tourism in protected areas in our country is linked to a number of difficulties, including the spatial differentiation. This allows us to formulate some *system problems of ecotourism development*:

- ✚ The ambiguity interpretation of the concept “ecological tourism” and its different understanding.
- ✚ Lack of preparation and, as a consequence, the uselessness of tourists resources.
- ✚ The inevitable conflicts between the recreation, environmental and traditional environmental management.
- ✚ Undeveloped infrastructure.
- ✚ Unpreparedness and lack of interest for ecotourism at the SPNTs’ administration.
- ✚ The lack of the recreational capacity estimates of the SPNTs’ territories and waters.

Currently there is no single definition of “ecological tourism”, and all existing ones repeat or complement each other, corresponding with the common principles, which can equally serve the purposes of ecotourism. According to these principles, ecotourism should be based on the natural resources and contribute to environmental education, conservation of local social and cultural environment, ensure economic benefits and sustainable development of the areas [1].

Classical, environmental interpretation of ecotourism is relatively undisturbed natural systems or individual components [2]. The objects of ecotourism are the concrete ways of interaction between a man and the environment and ways to minimize the negative effects of this interaction.

In accordance with specific objectives discussed above, ecological tourism has its specific being a type of recreation. In the opinion of A.V. Drozdov, the first function of ecotourism is providing physical rehabilitation due to the stay in environmentally friendly areas, greener services and inclusion in the rest of the diverse and balanced forms of activity. The author considers emotional recuperation and “getting rid of the stress of the city” as equally important. In addition, ecotourism advocates and enriches people with important scientific and ecological knowledge, including environmental safety. Last (but not least meaningful) function is formation of tolerant attitude towards other cultures and ethnicities, their way of life and traditions, adapted to the life within the nature [1].

E.Y. Kolbovski [2] considers ecotourism as a complex concept that includes three parts. Each part implies blocks of certain actions and settings: 1) cognitive (emotions, information, impressions); 2) athletic (physical effort); 3) consumer (food, leisure, entertainment).

So, we are focusing on the two most common definitions of ecological tourism. *The First one* was formulated in 1983 by Mexican ecologist and economist Hector Ceballos Lascurain. He understood ecotourism as a “travel in relatively undisturbed or pure plots of wildlife with the specific objectives of the study, as well as admiration and the pleasure of admiring the landscapes and their inhabitants, all manifestations of culture found in the area”. *The second* definition was given by the The Ecotourism Society: “ecotourism is a responsible travel to natural areas that promotes conservation and improves the well-being of local people” [3].

### ***Types and stages of the ecotourism development***

Ecotourism and its structure are not homogeneous. Various gradations and classification of eco-tourism and tours exist. The diversity of the ecotourism types could be divided into 2 major classes: 1) ecotourism within the boundaries of protected areas and ecosystems (classical type of environmental tourism); 2) ecotourism outside the bounds of especially protected natural territories and waters, mostly on the territory of the rural landscape.

V.V. Khrabovchenko identifies the following types of ecotourism: a scientific natural history tours; adventure tours; travel in natural reserves and SPNTs [4]. However, it is hard to distinguish the classification criterion (scientific and natural history tours — on the criterion of “purpose”; adventure tours — “purpose” and “method of organization”; travel in the natural reserves or the SPNTs is defined by the “object of visiting”). The use of classifications often causes difficulty. More accessible for use is the classification by A.V. Drozdov, who offered generalized hierarchical classification (table 1). Ecotourism there is a type of nature-oriented tourism.

*Table 1*

*Classification of tours (Drozdov, 2005)*

Level	Categories
Type	Nature-oriented
Classes	1. Eco-tours in the wild, in the borders of SPNA 2. Eco-tours outside the boundaries of protected areas on the territory of the cultural landscape
Types	1. On the main objective 2. On principal object
Forms	1. Age of participants 2. As their health 3. Largest groups

Types are defined by the aim and object of the tour [5]. *The "aim" criterion defines* the following types of tours: 1) observation and study of "wild" or "cultivated" nature with the environmental training; 2) relaxation in natural surroundings with emotional and aesthetic purposes; 3) medical treatment by natural factors; 4) tours with sport and adventure objectives. *The "object" criterion largely defines the content of the tour and partly shapes its organization:* 5) botanical, zoological, geological tours, etc.; 6) ecological and ethnographic or archaeological, ecological tours; 7) agricultural tours; 8) speleological, water and mountain tours.

In addition, ecological tours can be classified by many other features. For example, by the way of movement, composition of participants, duration, relative to the boundaries of the country of residence and so on. A very important classification sign of tours is the age and health of the participants, as well as the size of the groups.

Interestingly, the classification of tourism and ecotourism in English-speaking countries differs significantly. For example, the classification of tours (Lindberg K, 1993) depending on their purpose and nature of the activity: 1) "highly specialized": for scientists or members of the specialized tours (ecologic-educational and scientific - ornithological, botanical, ethnographic, archaeological, etc.); 2) "interest tours": tourists who deliberately come to protected areas to get knowledge of local nature and culture; 3) "main stream tours": tourists whose primary purpose is simply to get an "unusual journey"; 4) "random": tourists who visit natural reserves as a part of a broader tour [3].

Despite the relatively wide range of criteria for the classification of ecotourism, it is important to note that the main arena of development of ecological tourism is SPNTs of different types and grades [6]. According to the Russian Federal Law "On specially protected natural territories" (1995), SPNTs are "land, water and air space above them, the natural complexes and objects, which are of special environmental, scientific, cultural, recreational, aesthetic and recreational value, protected by decisions of public authorities from economic use, and enjoy a special mode of security"<sup>2</sup>. Analyzing the work of specialists in the field of ecological tourism, Khrabovchenko V.V., Kolbovsky E.Y., Drozdov A.V., Chihzova V.P. Stepanicky V.B., etc., it may be noted that every authors in one way or another allocates a cognitive component of ecological tourism, its orientation on cognition of nature and emphasizes the importance of this element.

The term "ecotourism" in Soviet sources appeared in the mid-1980s. Bureau of international youth tourism (BIYT) "Sputnik" developed "Ecotour on the Krugobaikalskaya railway", "Goloustnoj River Valley Ecotour" and some others. This is how the ecotourism was introduced in

---

<sup>2</sup> Federalnyj zakon RF «Ob osobo ohranyaemyh prirodnyh territoriyah» / Prinyat Gosudarstvennoj Dumoj 15 fevralya 1995 g. Redakciya ot 25 iyunya 2012 g.

our country. It was represented by the routes used for recreational purposes with a minimal impact on surrounding environment and when the visitors could be acquainted with natural-ecological problems of Lake Baikal. The concept of “ecotourism” was perceived more as a moral category, rather than economic [7].

The next step in the development of ecological tourism in our country is the introduction of such categories as “National Park”. The first National Park in the USSR was created in Estonia in 1971 (“Lahemaa”). By the year 1983, the territory of the USSR republics had eight national parks. The first national parks of Russia — “Sochinsky” (Krasnodar territory) and “Losiniy Ostrov” (Moscow). They were created in 1983. The other national parks of Russia were organized in 1990s. In 1995, Russian Federal Law on “especially protected nature territories” was approved by the Parliament. The law defined the function of protected areas, including the priority development of some kinds of tourism for different types of protected areas.

Today, Russia has a number of reputable organizations whose main activity is connected with the promotion of ecotourism in the country. Among the most significant are the following. *Ecological and educational center “Reserves”* was created for the project “Public support for protected areas and environmental education” carried out by the the World Wildlife Fund in 1996<sup>3</sup>. The centre acts as an independently public organization. Part of its staff is occupied with educational work and edition of popular science and information products to attract people and increase the interest of the population to SPNTs of Russia, which contributes to the development of ecotourism in protected areas.

*A non-governmental foundation for the development of ecotourism “Dersu Uzala”*<sup>4</sup> was established by the US Agency for international development (USAID) and the World Wildlife Fund (WWF). It is one of the first organizations whose activity is the ecological tourism only, its planning and development in the regions of Russia. The foundation also organizes training for professionals and employees of the SPNTs and tourist companies engaged in information services about the activities of Russian SPNTs.

In 1998, the Moscow State University supported the establishment of the “*Centre of environmental travel*” involved in the development of scientific and educational and ecological tourism in Russian reserves and national parks. In 2001, “Dersu Uzala” initiated the establishment of the *Association of Ecotourism*. Its primary mission is “promotion of international principles of sustainable and ecological tourism in Russia; the development of ecological tourism in the Russian pro-

---

<sup>3</sup> World Wildlife Fund. URL: <http://worldwildlife.org/> (Accessed: 18 March 2016).

<sup>4</sup> Fond razvitiya ekoturizma “DERSU UZALA”. URL: <http://www.ecotours.ru/ru/> (Accessed: 18 March 2016).

tected natural areas; work on projects for the preservation of the cultural and natural heritage of the country”<sup>5</sup>. The Association is working to create an information space in Russia in order to promote the world practice of ecological tourism.

However, despite the positive historical development trends and according to some experts, now ecotourism in our country is slowly developing. Weak legal protection is reflected in the territorial claims for tourist and recreational areas, reducing the potential for accommodation and ecotourism. Russia has a need for planning recreational and ecotourism attractive territories [8].

Unlike the reserves where tourism and its development could be carried out by a special order of the federal body of executive power, national parks provide functional zoning of the territory. Among the six possible tourist zones of the national parks, only one is fully reserved and any economic activity is prohibited there. Specially protected areas are open for excursions and tourism. The same applies to the objects of cultural heritage. The main distinguishing feature of the national park is the presence of recreational zone with sport facilities, tourist industry, museums and information centres. However, when it comes to organizing recreational activities on the territory of NP, such activity is possible only under a special protection regime.

*Natural Parks* (NPs) are one of the main goals of its activities. Recreation and tourism in the NPs mean “environmental recreational institutions under the responsibility of the responsible bodies of the Russian Federation; their territories include natural complexes and objects of significant environmental and aesthetic value that are possible to be used for environmental, educational and recreational purposes”. NPs are increasingly focused on the development of mass tourism.

Thus, we see that the main SPNT (under the current law), which may exercise activities, ecotourism is nature conservation zones, national and natural parks. While in the reserves, because of their exceptional conservation status, there are only strictly regulated and maximally sparing form visits.

At the same time, national and natural parks serve the main arena for the development of ecological tourism in our country. Significant recreational potential of the SPNTs can and should be a significant factor in the development of recreational areas and ecological tourism of our country.

The main part of the SPNTs (50-100%) is the land suitable for ecological tourism or land with the objects of cultural heritage. The other part of territory (agricultural, fishery, settlements) is not in use for tourism. The area around the SPNTs there is a zone where all economic activity should be done after approval of the state authorities. Usually some territories of the national parks have other owners and users. The proportion of such lands is extremely high (75% — in the

---

<sup>5</sup> Associaciya ekologicheskogo turizma. URL: <http://www.ecotourism-russia.ru/> (Accessed: 18 March 2016).

Park "Ozero Plesheyevo", 58% — "Orlovskoye Polesie", 54% — "Meshcherskiy" and "Russskiy Sever", 48% — "Samarskaya Luka", 41% — "Sebezhsy") [9].

It should be noted that Russia has a long tradition of development of tourisms close to ecological tourism in its modern sense.

### *The specificity of the ecological tourism in the Arctic*

In terms of the Arctic tourism development, it is necessary to assess the specificity of the ecological tourism in the region, which includes:

- a. extreme climatic conditions (seasonality of a tourist product);
- b. low accessibility and the high cost of tours;
- c. poor quality of information service on ecotourism in the Arctic;
- d. visa for foreign tourists;
- e. lack of guaranteed tourist demand, as a result, low interest of travel agents;
- f. high vulnerability of the Arctic ecosystems.

Successful development of ecological tourism means that the territory should have natural potential, favourable socio-economic conditions and a very good transport accessibility. It should also be provided with the necessary infrastructure, which, *firstly*, will create opportunities to host visitors, and *secondly*, will assist their safety prevent the destruction of natural landscapes. It is necessary to ensure maximum safety of protected natural complexes, including: proper organization of the territory; presence of specially equipped environmental trails and routes; equipment for the environmental trails and routes; information; a set of special rules and restrictions fo visitors and permanent monitoring and tracking of the visited territory<sup>6</sup>.

Another important factor in the development of ecotourism in the Arctic is the promotion of ecotourism products. At the federal level the following parameters are approved to access the quality of informational support: organization of educational activities in protected areas; the number of environmental trails and other tourist offers; detailed descriptions of the trails and routes; the presence and number of visit centers and museums; the presence of virtual tours and video materials; foreign language information and web pages. A comprehensive analysis allows to debide the SPNT in the following way (Fig. 1 and 2).

The history of the development of tourist activity in the Russian Arctic comprises three main phases, characterized by the political and socio-economic development of the country. Every stage of development has a certain set of periods caused by lifting and attenuation of tourist activity.

<sup>6</sup> Konceptii razvitiya sistemy osobo ohranyaemyh prirodnyh territorij federalnogo znacheniya na period do 2020 goda / Utverzhdena Postanovleniem Pravitelstva RF 22.12.2011.



Figure 1. NP information services



Figure 2. Nature reserves information services

**National parks (Figure 1):**

1. Alaniya. 2. Alhanaj. 3. Anyujskij. 4. Bashkiriya. 5. Beringiya. 6. Buzulukskij bor. 7. Valdaiskij. 8. Vodlozerskij. 9. Zabajkalskij. 10. Zemlya Leoparda. 11. Zov tigra. 12. Zyuratkul. 13. Kalevalskij. 14. Kenozerskij. 15. Kurshskaya kosa. 16. Losinyj ostrov. 17. Marij Chodra. 18. Meshhera. 19. Meshherskij. 20. Nechkinskij. 21. Nizhnyaya Kama. 22. Onezhskoe Pomore. 23. Orlovskoe Polese. 24. Paanayarvi. 25. Pleshheevo ozero. 26. Pribajkalskij. 27. Pripyshminskie bory. 28. Prielbruse. 29. Russkaya Arktika. 30. Russkij Sever. 31. Sajlyugemskij. 32. Samarskaya Luka. 33. Sebezhsckij. 34. Smolenskoe Poozere. 35. Smolnyj. 36. Sochinskij. 37. Taganaj. 38. Tunkinskij. 39. Ugra. 40. Udegejskaya legenda. 41. Hvalynskij. 42. Chavash Varmane. 43. Chikoj. 44. Shantarskie ostrova. 45. Shorskij. 46. Shushenskij bor. 47. Yugyd va.

**Nature reserves (fig. 2):**

1. Azas. 2. Altajskij. 3. Astrahanskij. 4. Bajkalo-Lenskij. 5. Bajkalskij. 6. Barguzinskij. 7. Basegi. 8. Bastak. 9. Bashkirskij. 10. Belogore. 11. Bogdinsko-Baskunchakskij. 12. Bolonskij. 13. Bolshaya Kokshaga. 14. Bolshehehcirskij. 15. Bolshoj Arkticheskij. 16. Botchinskij. 17. Bryanskij les. 18. Bureinskij. 19. Verxne-Tazovskij. 20. Visimskij. 21. Vitimskij. 22. Visherskij. 23. Volzhsko-Kamskij. 24. Voronezhskij. 25. Voroninskij. 26. Galichya gora. 27. Gydanskij. 28. Dagestanskij. 29. Dalnevostochnyj. 30. Darvinskij. 31. Dauruskij. 32. Denezhkin kamen. 33. Dzherginskij. 34. Dzhugdzhurskij. 35. Zhigulevskij. 36. Zejskij. 37. Ilmenskij. 38. Kabardino-Balkarskij. 39. Kavkazskij. 40. Kaluzhskie zaseki. 41. Kandalakshskij. 42. Katunskij. 43. Kedrovaya Pad. 44. Kerzhenskij. 45. Kivach.

46. Kologrivskij les. 47. Komandorskij. 48. Komsomolskij. 49. Koryakskij. 50. Kostomukshskij. 51. Kronockij. 52. Kuzneckij Alatau. 53. Kurilskij. 54. Lazovskij. 55. Laplandskij. 56. Magadanskij. 57. Malaya Sosva. 58. Mordovskij. 59. Neneckij. 60. Nizhne-Svirskij. 61. Norskij. 62. Nurgush. 63. Okskij. 64. Olekminskij. 65. Orenburgskij. 66. Ostrov Vrangelya. 67. Pasvik. 68. Pechoro-Ilychskij. 69. Pinezhskij. 70. Polistovskij. 71. Poronajskij. 72. Privolzhskaya lesostep. 73. Prioksko-Terrasnyj. 74. Prisurskij. 75. Putoranskij. 76. Rdejskij. 77. Rostovskij. 78. Sayano-Shushenskij. 79. Severo-Osetinskij. 80. Sihote-Alinskij. 81. Soxondinskij. 82. Stolby. 83. Tajmyrskij. 84. Teberdinskij. 85. Tigirekskij. 86. Tungusskij. 87. Ubsunurskaya Kotlovina. 88. Ussurijskij. 89. Ust-Lenskij. 90. Utrish. 91. Hakasskij. 92. Hankajskij. 93. Hinganskij. 94. Hoperskij. 95. Centralno-Lesnoj. 96. Centralno-Chernozemnyj. 97. Centralnosibirskij. 98. Chernye zemli. 99. Shajtan-Tau. 100. Shulgan-Tash. 101. Erzi. 102. Yuganskij. 103. Yuzhno-Uralskij.

The first phase (end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century — 1917) was associated with increasing interest of the Russian intelligentsia to the North of Russia, as well as with the development of river and sea passenger transport. Before the First World War, in 1914 the interest for travel goes down.

The second phase is the Soviet (1918—1991). It is associated with the change of government in the country and consists of three periods: the first period (1918—1930) is characterised by weak interest in tourism and travel due to the focus on reconstruction and development of the national economy. The pre-war period 1931—1941 is characterized by the establishment of the first tourist station on the Kola Peninsula in the first State organization focal point for tourist-excursion traffic. Interest for tourism grew up after the WWII and recovery of the state economy.

The third phase of Post-soviet (1992 — now) consists of two periods: 1992—2000 and 2001 — the present time. The first period of post-Soviet phase: the polar tourism was associated with the collapse of the Soviet Union and the destruction of a single all-Union tourist-excursion system. The modern period is characterized by the increasing interest in natural cognitive tourism in the Arctic, including ecotourism, by both Russians and foreign tourists.

### **Conclusion**

In the Russian Arctic development strategy until 2020, it is noted that “in order to strengthen good governance and socio-economic development in the AZRF it is necessary to provide: Arctic tourism development and expansion of environmentally friendly tourism activity in the Arctic; improvement of legislation to ensure tourism; its financial support and public-private partnerships and the Arctic tourism promotion at the national and international markets”<sup>7</sup>. The Arctic tourism development strategically and practically becomes an important element of socio-economic development of the Russian North.

The subjects of the Russian Federation, located above the Arctic Circle are invited called “Rossiiskoe Zapolyare” (“Russian Polar area”). This area of the Russian Arctic has extreme natural conditions, unique landscapes, vast uninhabited spaces, which imposes its own limitations to the

<sup>7</sup> O Strategii razvitiya Arkticheskoy zony Rossijskoj Federacii i obespecheniya nacionalnoj bezopasnosti na period do 2020 goda. URL: <http://government.ru/info/18360/> (Accessed: 18 March 2016).

organization of tourism and recreation. The Arctic has a variety of tourist and recreation resources, suitable for different types of tourism, including the journeys far from civilization.

Tourism and recreation in the Russian Arctic regions can help the employment and small business. The development of ecotourism contributes to the preservation of cultural and natural heritage, as well as increase the attention to indigenous cultures.

Authorities and polar management entities realize the potential, social and economic benefits from tourism. They develop and approve the strategy for socio-economic development of the regions, regional tourism development programmes and define tourism the priority of economic development. Tourism should be developed at the local level, in municipalities (or at district level). This approach is due to the current organizational structure of the territories, regions and the corresponding allocation of financial flows within the boundaries of the administrative division of the country, including those aimed at the development of tourism. It is clear that ecotourism is the most effective in those regions and municipalities where the tourist and recreationa potential is the highest.

The competitive advantages of development of ecological tourism in the Arctic region:

1. A large number of SPNR of different categories.
2. Large protected areas enable to “reserve” a part for infrastructure.
3. Diversity of natural conditions to use and to create a range of ecological products.
4. The Arctic tourism — the priority of the current world tourism.
5. The ability to preserve the heritage of the indigenous peoples of the North.
6. Involvement of the local population in economic activity.
7. Additional income for budgets.

## References

1. Drozdov A.V. *Osnovy ekologicheskogo turizma*. M.: Gardariki, 2005. 271 p.
2. Kolbovskiy E.Y. *Ekologicheskij turizm i ekologiya turizma*. M.: Izdatelskiy centr “Akademiya”, 2006. 256 p.
3. *Ekologicheskij turizm na puti v Rossiyu. Printsipy, rekomendatsii, rossiyskiy i zarubezhnyy opyt*. Tula: Grif i K, 2002. 284 p.
4. Khrabovchenko V.V. *Ekologicheskij turizm*. M.: Finansy i statistika, 2007. 207 p.
5. Drozdov A.V. *Sovremennyy ekoturizma kontseptsii i praktika. Teoriya i praktika mezhdunarodnogo turizma*: Sb. nauch. tr. Pod red. A.Yu. Aleksandrovoy. M.: KnoRus, 2003. 440 p.
6. Arsenyeva E.I., Kuskov A.S. *Ekoturistskiy potentsial osobo okhranyaemyh prirodnykh territoriy i problemy ego ispolzovaniya. Turizm i kulturnoe nasledie*: Sb. nauch. st. Vyp. 3. Saratov: SGU, 2005. pp. 7—19.
7. Emelyanova N.A. *Istoriya razvitiya ekologicheskogo turizma v Rossii. Mordovskiy zapovednik*. 2013. №5 (5). URL: <http://cyberleninka.ru/article/n/istoriya-razvitiya-ekologicheskogo-turizma-v-rossii> (Accessed: 18.03.2016).
8. Chizhova V.P., Sevostyanova L.I. *Ekologicheskij turizm: geograficheskij aspekt*. Yoshkar-Ola: MGTU, 2007. 275 p.
9. Gladkevich G.I. *Osobo okhranyaemye prirodnye territorii kak vazhneyshaya sostavlyayushchaya prirodnykh rekreatsionnykh resursov. Rekreatsionnaya geografiya: Uchebno-metodicheskij kompleks*/ Pod red. A.S. Kuskova, V.L. Golubeva, T.N. Odintsova. M.: MPSI, 2005. 496 p.

UDC 332.14(470.12)

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.80

## An integrated approach to tourism development in protected natural areas



© Victor S. Kuznetsov, Candidate of Geographical Sciences, a specialist in the field of system ecology and applied scientific research of wildlife and environmen in the North and in the Arctic zone of Russia. One of the founders of the National Park "Russian Arctic", author of a number of scientific and educational books on history of the discovery and development of the Arctic archipelago of Franz Josef Land and Novaya Zemlya, active member of the Russian Geographical

Society. E-mail: kvs1947@mail.ru

**Abstract.** The article presents the assessment of tourist activity in terms of development of economy and a result of increased interest of people to rest and travel in the Arctic. Development of the ecotourism in the protected areas is in focus of the article. A draft concept of tourism development in the National park "Russian Arctic" and the state nature reserve of federal importance "Franz Josef Land" are discussed in the context of the most promising approaches to the their development.

**Keywords:** *Arctic, tourist activity, tourist resources, tourist product, ecotourism, protected areas, natural and cultural heritage, development prospects.*

Currently, tourism is an integral part of human activity, forming an independent socio-economic development of certain areas that deserve attention. Outdoor sports is the basic concept in tourism. Financial life involves considerable resources, creates the management structure and promotes circulation of money in large quantities. Interest in travel is enormous, and it is the interest of the people to the knowledge about the nature, our planet and the lives of people on different continents. It resulted in the network of tourist companies, offices, tourist infrastructure, hotel complexes, comfortable liners, means of transport, etc. Tourism formed a well-established competition for business. Strategy for tourism development in the Russian Federation for the period untill 2020 considers tourism a source of financial revenue for the the budget system of the Russian Federation; a means of increasing employment and quality of life; a way of maintaining the health of the citizens; the basis for the development of social and cultural environment and patriotism, as well as a

powerful tool for education and development of civil society”<sup>1</sup>. This article aims at analysing the practice of tourism in the Arctic and it is largely based on the personal experiences of the author in the organization and planning of tourism in the National Park “Russian Arctic”.

### ***Tourist products at the SPNTs***

Tourism activity is many-sided, but its basis is the business contacts between tourists, consumers of services offered, and travel companies that offer these services. The range of services is quite extensive. The Russian Federal Law “about bases of tourist activity in the Russian Federation”, November 24, 1996 No. 132-FZ<sup>2</sup>:

*“tourism product* — range of services on transportation and accommodation provided for the total price (regardless of the value of excursion services and (or) other services) by the contract for tourist products;

*promotion of tourist product* — complex of measures aimed at the realization of the tourism product (advertising, participation in specialized exhibitions, fairs, organisation of tourist information centres, publishing catalogues, booklets, etc.);

*realization of tourist product* — activity of a tour operator or travel agent contract on realization of a tourist product, as well as the activities of the tour operator and/or third parties providing tourist services in accordance with this legal act”<sup>3</sup>.

Today, everyone can choose the type of tourism he likes, can afford. Brochures are full of suggestions on visiting those or other places that you can explore and enjoy communing with nature, culture and lifestyle of the local population. A special place in the classifications of tourism is occupied by eco-tourism including the one in specially protected natural territories (SPNTs). One can say that the types of tourism is rather conditional. Classic tourism is practiced rarely. However, to seek the nomination of the tourism in its classic form is necessary because the tourism industry is not at a standstill and remains active.

Ecological tourism in the Arctic directs tourists to commune with nature. Theorists of ecological tourism discuss this type of tourism and say it should provide not just a passive communication with nature but also the acquaintance and communication with the local population, living in harmony with local natural conditions.

<sup>1</sup> Strategiya razvitiya turizma v Rossijskoj Federacii na period do 2020 goda. 31 maya 2014 g. URL: <http://government.ru/docs/12933/>; [http://www.consultant.ru/document/cons\\_doc\\_LAW\\_164146/](http://www.consultant.ru/document/cons_doc_LAW_164146/) (Accessed: 19 March 2016).

<sup>2</sup> URL: [http://www.consultant.ru/document/cons\\_doc\\_LAW\\_12462/](http://www.consultant.ru/document/cons_doc_LAW_12462/) (Accessed: 19 March 2016).

<sup>3</sup> FZ ot 24 noyabrya 1996 №132-FZ «Ob osnovah turistskoj deyatel'nosti v Rossijskoj Federacii». URL: <http://base.consultant.ru/cons/cgi/online.cgi?req=doc;base=LAW;n=181793;fld=134;dst=1000000001,0;rnd=0.1406099906132281> (Accessed: 19 March 2016).

The most suitable areas for ecotourism are territories with special environmental status and, above all, the territory of national parks. National parks, including the Arctic NP "Russkaya", as a form of management of especially protected natural territories, are the most promising form of environmental management and environmental protection. Those territories are suitable to practice techniques for the conservation of the natural and cultural heritage and for limited tourism, which has classical ecological direction.

It should also be borne in mind that tourism in national parks is just at an initial stage of development. Historically a conservative approach to nature protection provides priority to restraining functions, limiting the ability to improve various kinds of tourism. The exception is ecological tourism, definitely suitable for areas with environmental status. In each case, therefore, we should have an individual approach to the development of tourism on specially protected natural territories, taking into account the balance of the economy and ecology. On the basis of a preliminary comprehensive analysis of regional natural and cultural-historical features of each national park needs to build their own local policies in the field of development of ecological tourism.

In modern literature, the problems of tourism development in the Russian Arctic is investigated but is still clearly insufficient, especially when it comes to existing national parks that have been established in the 21<sup>st</sup> century. E.B. Grushenko discusses the strategy for the development of marine tourism in the Arctic in his article. He analyzed the Arctic icebreaker cruises to high latitudes, mentioned flights from Murmansk on Franz Josef Land with a stop at a Novaya Zemlya [1]. The activities of the Arctic NP "Russkaya" the author does not mention for one simple reason — the park simply has not started its work at the time of publication. Materials of inter-regional scientific-practical conference (Apatity, 14—16 November, 2012.) "The development of the North and the Arctic: problems and perspectives": E. B. Grushenko [2] only concerned marine tourism development issues in the Arctic in one report. The author emphasizes that for Russians the Arctic remain unknown and unattractive tourist region. However, in the Murmansk and Arkhangelsk regions, marine cruise tourism is popular and the number of people wishing to visit the North Pole and the Russian Arctic is constantly growing. The main conditions for tourism development in the Arctic seas — the creation of a special cruise fleet and coastal tourism infrastructure. Currently, Russian tour operators are poorly represented in the segment of expeditionary cruises to the Arctic. Financial strength and experience of foreign cruise lines practically exclude opportunity for Russian companies to organize and sell tours to the Russian Arctic on the world market [2, p. 24]. In the collective monograph "Goeconomic processes in the Arctic and marine communications development" (2014), it was noted that it was unlikely to have an appropriate social optimism

concerning tourism cluster in the economy of the Arctic. "It is pointless to deny its role as momentum for creating new segments of regional complexes. Anticipate the need to not only a positive impact of commercial tourist industry, but also the inevitable socio-cultural costs", noted N. P. Zalyvskij [3, p. 48].

In this article, the first is an example of the project "concept of tourism development in the National Park "Russian Arctic" and the state nature reserve of federal significance "Franz Josef Land" (Arkhangelsk, 2016). This experience has both theoretical and practical importance. It may be useful to other protected areas in the Russian Arctic.

### ***General provisions, aims and objectives of the concept***

This concept was developed in accordance with the requirements of the Federal State budget-funded agency NP "Russian Arctic", approved by the order of the Minister of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation No. 209, April 13, 2011. The National Park "Russian Arctic" was approved by order of the Minister of Natural resources of the Russian Federation № 806; the provisions on the state federal natural reserve "Franz Josef Land" are approved by the order of the Minister of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation No. 679. The main provisions on tourism are in the federal law No. 132-FZ November 24, 1996. The bases of tourist activity in the Russian Federation mentioned in the law "about specially protected natural territories" No. 33-FZ March, 14, 1995 and a law No. 7-FZ "On environmental protection" points to the need to develop instruments which determine the development of tourism in protected areas. The place and role of tourism as a component of economic development in the AZRF, defined in the framework of the state policy in the Arctic for the period until the year 2020 and beyond, signed by the President of Russia D.A. Medvedev in 2008. In addition, one more document is important and it is the development strategy of the Russian Federation Arctic and national security strategy for the period until 2020, approved in 2013 by Russian President Vladimir Putin.

The aim of this concept is the creation of conditions for the development of tourism and recreation regulated within the territory of the national parks and state natural reserves of federal significance "Franz Josef Land" through high-quality visitor services, outreach escort cruise flights, conducting excursions, printing and advertising, information and scientific nature.

To achieve this goal, you will accomplish the following tasks:

- a) Inventory of natural, historical and cultural values and a list of geographic locations relevant to tourism development;
- b) A set of studies on the natural characteristics of the territory; identify rare and endangered species of animals and plants in order to avoid, or limit, tourists can visit the habitats of rare animals and plants;

- c) Work on recreational arrangement and accomplishment of the territory of the national park and wildlife reserve of federal importance; the creation and arrangement of nature trails and hiking trails;
- d) The establishment a federal reserve head office, museum on the territories of the national park, and ensuring their functioning in the interests of the tourism development;
- e) The constant release of outreach booklets, brochures and other printed products, aimed at informing the population and potential tourists on sightseeing in the Russian Arctic;
- f) Qualitative Internet-support information on the state of tourism in natural areas of the Russian Arctic;
- g) Business contacts with tourism companies, developing cruise tourism in the Arctic;
- h) Commissioning application and reporting forms for the visit, cruise ships and yachts.

### ***Legal acts and the Arctic tourism***

Laws and governing principles usually regulate any activity, especially activities in a specific subject area. Tourism today is not a narrow subject area with a holiday function, travel and entertainment. It turns into a large segment of the economy, involving significant amounts of financial resources and actively influencing the economy of territories. Tourism is an independent, steadily growing industry. Tourist companies are actively introduced in hospitality, the sphere of public catering, transportation, advertising and printing, local authorities and of course the administration of specially protected natural territories. Each institution or company is looking for its place in the tourism industry.

The Federal law "About fundamentals of tourist activity in the Russian Federation (No. 132-FZ, November, 24 1996) determined that "tourism — a tour operator and travel agency activities, as well as other travel activities. Tourism resources — natural, historical, socio-cultural objects, including objects of tourism, as well as other display objects, able to satisfy the spiritual needs of tourists and others, to help to maintain their livelihoods, to rehabilitate and develop their physical strength.

The Charter of the National Park "Russian Arctic" says: "the objective of the institution is conservation of natural complexes and objects of ecologic, historic, aesthetic value, intended to use for environmental, educational, scientific and cultural purposes and for the development of controlled tourism. The institution carries out activities, including activities in the area of organization and development of tourism and recreation on the territory of the National Park, visitor services and excursions". For the development of controlled tourism, organization of excursions on the territory of the Franz Josef Land Archipelago and the northern tip of the Severniy Island of Novaya Zemlya: the first priority is to identify the most significant natural, cultural and historical sites. The objects established and approved as priorities for tourism development should be assessed for their prospects for tourism. To show the natural and historical sights of objects. There

should be a general description, prepared booklets, brochures and other information materials for tourist companies and their agents, as well as potential tourists.

It should be borne in mind that tourism in the Arctic has its regional specificities related to the particular climatic conditions and the need to ensure reliable security. In addition, the issue of accessibility of the SPNTs in the Arctic is very important. Maritime or air travel in the Arctic plays a great role for the tourists. All this complicates the raise economic efficiency of the Arctic tourism.

Currently, there is considerable political support for tourism development in the Arctic. When you define the main objectives of the policy of the Russian Federation in the Arctic in the sphere of socio-economic development (2008), it is indicated the need for environmental management and development of environmentally friendly forms of tourism. The program, approved in 2013 by the President of Russia Vladimir Putin, "Arctic development strategy of the Russian Federation and national security for the period up to the year 2020" provides "... Arctic tourism development and expansion of environmentally friendly tourism activity in the Arctic. Arctic tourism promotion at the national and international markets" in order to improve the system of public administration, socio-economic development of the AZRF.

Therefore, forable conditions for the determination of tourism within the territory of the National Park "Russian Arctic" and the State nature reserve of federal significance "Franz Josef Land" have been established. Those territories are an integral part of the system of the state management of social and economic development of the Russian Arctic.

#### ***Evaluation of natural conditions, the status of the territory and cultural-historical heritage of the NP "Russian Arctic" and GPZFZ "Franz Josef Land"***

The National Park "Russian Arctic" includes two separate archipelagoes — Franz Josef Land and the north of the Severniy Island of the Novaya Zemlya Archipelago. Despite the proximity of these protected areas, the similarity of geographical conditions and climatic characteristics, there are significant differences, as the natural environment, and the history of their discovery.

In respect of both the Arctic archipelagos, constitute the most sublime sites of the continental shelf, stretching to the Arctic periphery Eurasia. Franz Josef Land Archipelago represents an ensemble of 192-194 islands located within the Barents-Kars platform. The best studied part of the Barents-Kars platform is also situated there [4, p. 18]. Active geological processes took place there when land-based species of reptiles, dinosaurs reigned and, apparently, those landforms rise a talk about the volcanic origin of the islands of the archipelago. In the midst of the Quaternary period, characterized by the extinction of large mammals and the emergence of modern man, there was a powerful glaciation on the territory of the archipelago and the Barents Sea shelf. Pro-

cesses of glaciation had also left traces on the islands and they may be of interest for estimates of the geological past. Their neotectonic and geomorphological characteristics of Franz Josef Land are represented by a strong fragmentation, and nowhere else this fragmentation does not occur in the Arctic.

Novaya Zemlya along with the island Vaygach are a continuation of Uralo-Pajhojskoj mountainous country. The northern half of the Severnyi Island is a one-piece massif, 80% covered with ice shield. In the ice, it is possible to see some separate nunataks — mountain tops with a height from 800 to 1000 metres. The area between the capes of Sakharov and Varnek has nunataks form the coastal mountain range, known as the mountains of Mendeleev. Magmatic Mesozoic rocks are noted in the Inostrancev Bay area and near the Cape Zhelaniya. Thus, external notable landforms at the northern tip of the Severniy Island of Novaya Zemlya are also confined to the era of dinosaurs.

Harsh Arctic Polar climate is a feature of especially protected natural territories of the Russian Arctic. For this zone, the main factors are the climate, the atmospheric circulation, the hydrological regime of the sea and islands covered with glaciers.

History of the discovery of the Arctic archipelago of Franz Josef Land is a subject of particular attention. In 1873, the Austro-Hungarian polar expedition opened new, previously unknown land. Expeditions after it started the research of the area and made a general description of the islands of the archipelago [5, p. 1021]. Many expeditions were individual, of a private nature and, as a rule, included representatives of different states. The data shows that only a small part of the expeditions had scientific and educational objectives. The rest were caused by fishing and business objectives like hunting the local sea animals. Now, the islands stil have the ruins and separate buildings. The people who tried themselves in the Polar conditions used these buildings not only for wintering but also as storages for fluel and food warehouses. At the beginning of the 20th century, interest in the North Pole was extremely high.

Great interest has the history of the archipelago during the Soviet period. Before 1929, Franz Josef Land archipelago had not been a part of any state. This territory had been claimed by several states involved in the discovery of the archipelago. Yes, in fact, the name Franz Josef gave reason to believe that this was the territory of the Austro-Hungarian Empire. Its assosiation with Russia was approved in 1929 after the creation of the permanent Russian polar station there. Some people believe that in 1929 Russia annexed the archipelago and it had to have a status similar to Antarctica. Therefore, it is important to continue the work on objective coverage of Russian organizations in the Arctic during the Soviet Union.

The history of the Severniy Island of Novaya Zemlya is also of great interest because of the Ice Harbor, place of a forced wintering for the Dutch expedition of Willem Barents<sup>4</sup>. In addition, here have been researching Russian pioneers, starting from the 17<sup>th</sup> century, historical events of the WWII and Soviet polar stations, providing transportation along the Northern sea route.

Thus, the territory of Franz Josef Land and the northern tip of Novaya Zemlya, in terms of nature, cultural and historical heritage, is of great interest for the development of cognitive, ecological and extreme tourism.

### ***Tourism in the Arctic and the international organizations and travel agencies***

The National Park "Russian Arctic" and the federal reserve "Franz Josef Land" should be understood, on the one hand, as part of the Arctic lands, and on the other hand, as part of the Russian Arctic. This misinterpretation is necessary in order to assess the condition and prospect of the development of tourist activity, in terms of not only national economic interests, but also taking into account global trends, strengthen attention to the Arctic.

After the recognition of the Arctic archipelago of Franz Josef Land a territory of Russia, significant increase of Russian companies and scientific polar stations occurred. In the pre-war period, the work of the specialized meteorological stations allowed participation of foreign experts and the expeditionary groups. Unfortunately, in the post-war period, the Arctic had intensified activities aimed at strengthening the country's defense. The work and the results of the state were closed, limiting the possibility of international cooperation. However, interest in the Arctic territories, grew up by 1970s. The first group of Soviet skiing tourists began to visit Arctic territory. Of course, these sports tourists were well prepared for ski crossings and received permission from authorities and guarantees of security of the Arctic campaign. The Arctic treks skiers were widely covered by the mass media, but these hikes did not have further development.

In the beginning of 1990s, individual travel companies began to organize Arctic cruises to the North Pole with a visit to the archipelago of FJL. At this time, cruise tourism development was in not only the Russian Arctic, but also especially in Greenland, Svalbard and Antarctica. Therefore, travel companies that specialize in organizing tours to the Arctic and Antarctic regions formed their organization AESO (Association of Arctic Expedition Cruise Operators). Arctic cruise operators Association has been in operation since 2003 and its headquarters is located in Svalbard. Posting this Association Headquarters in Svalbard is understandable, as the archipelago is the most visited by tourists from all over the world. Organization of tourism in Svalbard could be taken as a model.

---

<sup>4</sup> Buhta Ledyanaya gavan. URL: <http://wikimapia.org/11364016/ru/Buxta-Ledyanaya-Gavan>' (data obrashheniya: 19 March 2016).

Over the past twenty years, interest in the Arctic as a whole has increased and there is no doubt that for the average person this interest is associated with tourism activities. The western part of the Russian Arctic, which includes the territory of Franz Josef Land and the Severniy Island of Novaya Zemlya, is very attractive for tourists because of natural beauty and rich history. In addition, Arctic Cruises to the North Pole are quite popular among the wealthy citizens of economically developed countries. The number of tourists visiting the North Pole with a stop at the FJL is growing. So, if in the 1990s the maximum number of tourists — 400 people — was noted in 1994, then in summer 2012, the number of tourists reached 1 024, and in season, 2015 — 1 225 people. All this says about the great tourist potential of the western sector of the Russian Arctic.

The further developing tourism in the Franz Josef Land and Novaya Zemlya should take into account the positive experience of tourism on similar natural and cultural-historic territory of Svalbard. The territory developed a whole system of tourist conduct, operators of tourist activity, as well as the crews of cruise ships on the shore. Regulations for tourists has developed clear instructions on human behavior in various situations. There are indications for cases of human encounter with a polar bear, and recommendations on conducting observations of other animals and birds for which the Arctic is home. Experience of tourism at Svalbard allowed Cruise Operators Association to develop recommendations for almost all cases. In general, we can say that all the Arctic tourist companies are interested in having humans in the vulnerable nature of the Arctic with a minimal impact on the nature itself. They are interested in preservation of nature. Thus, the specificity of tourist activity on the Arctic islands of the Russian Arctic requires a careful approach to the creation of high-quality tourist product that corresponds to modern international standards.

#### ***How to make Novaya Zemlya and Franz Josef Land attractive for tourism***

When improving the attractiveness of especially protected natural territories of the Arctic archipelagos, it is necessary to proceed from the characteristics of the geographic location of those territories. First, be aware of the remoteness of the territory, islands marine location, harsh climatic conditions and clearly expressed seasonality, which makes it difficult to talk about the possibility of year-round visit. The remoteness of the area from major transport nodes and priority use of marine transport to reach the island territories define the high cost of tourist cruises that predominate in Arctic tourism business. Therefore, the interests of tourists is ranged by the level of their material status. The most preferred is a visit to the territory of the Arctic archipelagos and their natural and historical objects. However, not every tourist can afford such an opportunity. Less wealthy tourists, provide an opportunity to familiarize themselves with the features of the Arctic especially protected natural territories, without visiting them. In this case, you need to cre-

ate a network of information centres, visit equipped specialized rendering, giving the opportunity to virtual visit.

Accordingly, all activities should be divided into three separate groups:

1. Organizational and management activities, preparation of booklets, brochures, guide-books and other materials required.
2. Activities aimed at the construction of tourists' accommodation on the Seveniy Island of Novaya Zemlya and Franz Josef Land.
3. Activities to establish a Visit Centre located in the building of the Head Office of the National Park in Arkhangelsk, expositions, presentations, slideshows, videos and other materials about the Park to show tourists and visitors.

#### ***Organizational and management activities***

- 1) Annual issue of information materials covering natural features of the Arctic region, its historical and cultural heritage and the main results of the activities of the national park and specially protected natural territories.
- 2) Business contacts with tourism companies, agencies and other organizations working in the field of the cruise tourism in the Arctic.
- 3) Planning and participation in exhibitions, conferences, seminars and other activities related to tourism activities in the Arctic.
- 4) Development of promising infrastructure projects, sites and objects of natural and historic attractions, including the ecology of environmental trails and observation platforms.

#### ***Activities aimed at the construction of visit centers***

- 1) Justification and approval of the list of the places of natural and historical, cultural interest recommended for tourists at the scientific and technical Council (STC).
- 2) Edition of booklets with history profiles, names, natural, historical and cultural features of the places recommended for tourists.
- 3) Drafting of settlement for each of the selected sites, including establishing ecological trails, observation points, resting places, objects, museums
- 4) Develop rules and regulations for visiting, as well as information support for cruise specialists of the National Park.
- 5) Compiling for places with the presence of objects of historical and cultural heritage of individual project museumification of the place, its approval at the STC.
- 6) A register of equipment (generators, heat gun, stoves, transport, tools, household equipment, etc.) required for the functioning of the temporary homes.

7) Determine the volume of necessary financial support for arrangement of the territory (project work), as well as the equipment, fuel, tools, vehicles.

#### ***Organizing a Vvisit Centre and the head office in Arkhangelsk***

1) The project for a Visit Center, exhibition and educational complex, including museum and exhibition space with animations, slideshows, movies.

2) Identifying potential projects and producing movies with elements of flash animation on various subjects, up to 5 minutes. Videos should be designed for different target audiences (children up to 7 years, schoolchildren, students, adults) on historical, ecological and natural themes.

3) Define the scope of the required financial resources to pay for the manufacture and drawing up a work plan.

4) Development of a to build a new Visit Center of the National Park "Russian Arctic" in Arkhangelsk, a Visit Center lab transformer complex and the Oceanarium.

The establishment of the National Park "Russian Arctic" on the uninhabited island territories of high-latitude Arctic and the beginning of tis administration needs an innovative approach to its functioning. Tourism activities, as the new direction of the development of global business, are attracting more financial resources for the SPNTs. On one hand, the National Park Directorate should ensure integrity and protection of natural, historical and cultural values of the territory; on the other hand, it is needed to develop environmental education and tourism for each protected area. Therefore, a new tourism development should be done to establish the proposed tourist product. The concept should also the basic directions of development of tourist activities and the specialty of the Arctic territories, taking into account contemporary trends in the development of tourism.

#### ***Conclusion***

Communication with nature reflects the degree of development of human society: its dependence on natural forces, the nature of the involvement of natural resources into economic life and recognition by the man himself as indissoluble particle of the complex world of wildlife. Improving the technical means and technologies, people have gradually moved from the natural environment and wildlife by creating comfortable conditions of life. Life in the city has become a role model, and people assumed natural to stay in comfort, warmth and away from the wild living conditions. The remaining corners untouched wildlife on earth began to declare special environmental territories in which either restricted or entirely prohibited any economic activity. This so-called natural reserves, designed for research, limited tourism and educational activities. A person needs to understand the wildlife on Earth and to feel the relationship of life and nature. We should

search for optimal environmental conditions, something between the technological development of modern society and preservation of nature.

When improving our lifestyles, it is interesting to know all the secrets of life in other areas of the world, and tourism, as a journey in space and time enriches it with new knowledge. Tourism in areas with special environmental status can help in determining ways of organizing life. This process is not simple, it can be quite long, but it is what people often search for. The proposed concept can be a practical scheme of such a search.

### References

1. Grushenko E.B. Strategiya razvitiya morskogo turizma v Evroarkticheskoj zone. *Ekonomicheskie i socialnye peremeny: fakty, tendencii, prognoz*. 2009. № 1 (5). pp. 74—79.
2. Grushenko E.B. Razvitie morskogo turizma v Arktike. *Razvitie Severa i Arktiki: problemy i perspektivy*. Materialy mezhhregionalnoj nauchno-prakticheskoj konferencii, Apatity, 14—16 noyabrya 2012 g. Apatity, 2012. pp. 23—25.
3. *Geoekonomicheskie processy v Arktike i razvitie morskikh kommunikacij* / nauch. red. d.e'.n., prof. S.Yu. Koz'menko, d.e'.n., prof. V.S. Selin. Apatity: KNC RAN, 2014. pp. 41—51.
4. Gosudarstvennaya geologicheskaya karta RF. Seriya Severo-Karsko-Barencemorskaya. SPb: Kartfabrika VSEGEI, 2011.
5. Severnaya enciklopediya. M.: Evropejskie izdaniya, 2004.

UDC 338.48

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.96

## Arctic tourism: the rating of regions, the opportunities and threats



© Yury F. Lukin, Doctor of Historical Sciences, Professor, Editor-in-chief of “Arctic and North” journal, Northern Arctic Federal University named after M. V. Lomonosov. E-mail: lukin.yury@mail.ru

**Abstract.** Arctic and northern tourism as operational definitions are used in scientific publications more infrequently and irregularly. In practice, the tourism has become an inalienable sector of the economy; it has a multiplying effect for the development of social services, infrastructure and other sectors. The first National Tourist Rating of the 85 subjects of the Russian Federation (2015), the first rating of tourist attractiveness of the regions of the Russian Arctic contributes to the analyz-

es of the opportunities and threats to tourism.

**Keywords:** *Arctic tourism, rating, regions, Russian Arctic, maps, multiplying effect*

Arctic tourism is a conceptual notion and the operational definition. The majority of specialists in science recognize it in the common paradigm of tourism. It has not been widely adopted and is most commonly used in practice, in management, in scientific literature on the establishment of the first Russian Arctic National Park (NP), polyfunctional protected natural and historical-cultural territory, the NP "Russkaya". Its entire infrastructure got a solid grounding in a fundamental scientific work is a monograph "Novaya Zemlya", edited by P. Boyarskiy, published in 2009 [1, p. 237—245].

Dmitry Medvedev has outlined the main eight pillars of international economic cooperation in the Arctic in his work (2015) “*Arctic tourism*” [2, p. 55—56]. He noted the prospect of this trend of tourism: “Arctic tourism seems to be one of the most controversial, but often discussed areas for further development and international economic cooperation. Unique historical, architectural, cultural and natural heritage of the Arctic offers great opportunities to attract tourists. Over the past five years we have seen positive growth in tourist traffic, the construction of new infrastructure, creation of jobs, appearance of a rich tourist-and-recreational complex. Every major analytical report about the development of the Arctic in recent years mentioned the importance and availability of this direction” [2, p. 55].

A.S. Vorobyeva (RGGU named after A. I. Herzen) in the article “Arctic tourism in Russia: problems and prospects” emphasized the tendency of growth of tourism in Arctic regions, due to a number of reasons: the need for the development of new, previously unseen areas; growing num-

ber of people involved in extreme tourism; the rising popularity of exclusive tours, including travel to the North Pole and the Barents Sea Islands [3, p. 35]. Here the focus is made on reasoning from the standpoint of classical management. So tourism is seen to be designed to meet the growing needs of people.

Scientific and practical relevance had the project “*Arctic tourism development strategy until 2030*”, proposed by the Union “Northern industrialists and entrepreneurs”, the main developer of proposals — S.V. Kanavin [4]. Russian experts believe that “tourism on the territory of the AZRF could become as popular as Alaska, Canada, Norway, Iceland and Finland. It is necessary to develop and implement the “*Arctic tourism development strategy until 2030*”, highlight the Arctic tourism, make it a separate tourist product” [4]. The world and the Russian experience has shown that the most effective and rapid form of tourism development is a public-private partnership. The purpose of “*Arctic tourism development strategy until 2030*” will be the establishment of a modern competitive tourist complex in the AZRF (including SPNTs), providing the opportunity to meet ecological and aesthetic, educational and recreational needs of Russian and foreign citizens and contribute to the development of the nature protection complexes of the Russian Arctic. The main directions of the practical implementation of the Strategy: the development of handicrafts of the small-numbered indigenous peoples of the North and the Far East; ethnographic tourism, creation and development of ethnic settlements; simplification and harmonization of ski trails and extreme tourism; insurances for travel agencies; development of local tourism; scientific expeditions and educational tourism; ecological tourism; the introduction of a uniform telecommunication; electronic communication systems for the needs of the Arctic tourism. The result should appear and operate *the Arctic tourist-recreational cluster* — it is the expressed position of Russian business.

Arctic tourism concept introduced in management. “If we talk about evaluating the tourism potential of Russian regions, here all regions roughly equal to each other. Each subject has rich natural resources, unique historical and cultural factors. Someone at another beach holidays, for example, *Arctic tourism*», — noted, for example, Nikolai Korolev, Deputy Head of the Federal Agency for tourism (Russia), in December 2015 [5].

The unique capabilities of the tourism potential of the Arctic, the need for intensive international cooperation allow us to collectively allocate this kind of tourism as an independent. Arctic tourism cannot be developed in isolation, as a safe tourist trips in the extreme conditions of the far North (AZRF fully within its composition) is kapitaloëmkim and requires specific knowledge and competence is no coincidence. So in 2011—2013 biennium was implemented by the international

project "public-private partnership in tourism in the Barents region" (BART), which then became a plan for tourism development in the Barents region by 2013—2015 years.

*What is Arctic tourism?* The simplest answer to this question — this is tourism, which is localized directly in the Arctic, Arctic region. However, following that logic, we can distinguish the Northern, southern, also African American, and other types of geographically oriented tourism. Localization of the venues of the tourist routes in a particular region of the Earth, obviously, has its own meaning for binding to a specific territory, to any country, has the right to exist in business tourism. However, most still say "tourism in Africa "the tourist industry in Europe". It would be more logical then to explore tourism in the Arctic ", " Northern tourism in Svalbard or North Russia, Ocean cruising in the Arctic.

If we talk about the Arctic tourism, as scientific-practical definitions, the grounds for its allocation are, in my opinion, *firstly*, the traditional image of the Arctic, as "Terra Incognita" (Latin "unknown land"), which always attracts, beckons, fascinates some people, travelers, tourists. *Secondly*, uniqueness and peculiarities of tourist-natural, cultural and historical potential of the circumpolar space, the richness of the cultural and natural heritage, including UNESCO, the presence of a large number of specially protected natural territories (spnt) and the waters of the northern seas. *Thirdly*, the emergence and active promotion in marketing, branding, tourism, public opinion in such a strong and attractive brand as "Arctic tourism, its development as a sector of the economy, income-generating activities. *Fourthly*, the international significance of the Arctic type of tourism, requiring cooperation and partnership resources for his organization, security and coordination in harsh, often in extreme conditions of the Arctic region. *Fifthly*, the satisfaction of spiritual and other needs, motivation, psychology of the person looking to drive, strong impressions, desire for a special reason, radically different from the usual visits to Sochi, Crimea or in Cyprus. Arctic tourism, even gulets on a comfortable boat to some extent always extreme and mentally examines human qualities in different situations. In addition, extreme tourism positively characterises the identity of the tourist in the perception of family and friends, work colleagues (at the North Pole, the Arctic islands, inhabited by polar bears, passed the Northern sea route, saw bird's bazaars ...). All of this together and allows you to conditionally highlight Arctic tourism from other types of tourism, such as *unique tourist product* demand among consumers. This demand is limited mostly only purse client and transport due to individual artifacts and natural beauties in the Arctic.

To understand the meaning of the concepts used, it is also important to clarify the basic concepts of "tourism" and "tourism", as in the Russian literary language used both of these adjec-

tives as equivalent. However, in federal law of November 24, 1996 No. 132-FZ "about bases of tourist activity in the Russian Federation» are used the following basic formal-business concepts<sup>1</sup>:

*Tourism* — temporary visits (travel) of citizens of the Russian Federation, foreign citizens and persons without citizenship (hereinafter - face) with domicile in therapeutic, recreational, educational, sports, business, religious and other purposes without the activities related to the receipt of income from sources in a country (place) of temporary stay;

*tourism activities* - tour operator and travel agency activities, as well as other travel activities;

*tourism innutrennij* — tourism within the territory of the Russian Federation permanently resident in the Russian Federation;

*outbound tourism* — tourism persons permanently residing in Russia, or in another country;

*tourism entry* — tourism within the territory of the Russian Federation of persons not residing permanently in the Russian Federation;

*tourism international* — tourism exit or entry;

*tourism social* is tourism, undertaken wholly or partly at the expense of the state budget, extrabudgetary funds (including funds allocated under the State social assistance), as well as employers;

*tourism amateur* — tourism organized by the tourists themselves;

*tourist resources* — natural, historical, socio-cultural objects, including objects of tourism, as well as other display objects, which are able to satisfy the spiritual needs of tourists and others, help to maintain their livelihoods, rehabilitate and develop their physical strength;

*tourist product* — range of services on transportation and accommodation provided for the total price (regardless of the inclusion in the total price value of excursion services and (or) other services) on the contract on realization of tourist product [No. 132-FZ ed. from 29.06.2015].

Using business language and formal conceptual definitions, we can say that the *Arctic tourism* is an internal and international tourism in the Arctic, which is a promising sector of the Russian economy. Arctic tourism defined as a visiting or for citizens permanently residing in Russia; or as the entry for foreign persons not residing permanently in the Russian Federation.

*Arctic international tourism* immediately locates the entire region providing complex tourist services not only in the Russian Arctic and abroad. This and North Pole, Svalbard (Norwegian Svalbard), Alaska (United States), Norway, Greenland, Iceland, Canada, the Islands and waters of the seas of the Arctic Ocean (SLO). This situation objectively implied partnership, an intensive international cooperation and integration in the field of Arctic tourism. Within the framework of realization of the already mentioned project it was carried out, for example, collecting general information about the development of the tourism industry in the Barents region, a comparative analysis of the tourist potential of the northern regions of Russia and abroad, identified the main challenges and prospects for the development of regional tourism, conducted a study to evaluate the needs and expectations of participants in the tourist market, adopted a plan of action for tourism development

<sup>1</sup> Federalnyj zakon «Ob osnovah turistskoj deyatel'nosti v Rossijskoj Federacii» ot 24 noyabrya 1996 goda №132-FZ. URL: [http://www.consultant.ru/document/cons\\_doc\\_LAW\\_12462/](http://www.consultant.ru/document/cons_doc_LAW_12462/) (Accessed: 06 February 2016).

priority<sup>2</sup>. There is no doubt that tourism activities has been unable, despite the geopolitical risks to Arctic factor of international partnership, modernization of the northern territories.

There is reason to methodologically and conceptually treating the concept — "*Northern tourism*", in a broader sence. Northern tourism within the country uses tourist resources not only in the Russian Arctic, but the northern territories of the European North, Siberia and the Far East that fall into areas of the far north of the country and equivalent localities, representing 70% of the whole territory of Russia. Arctic tourism when it becomes like part of the Northern tourism, since all land territory of AZRF is fully included in the far north of Russia. Split in management, in practice, the use of these two conditional concepts raises some difficulties, but you must do this, given the characteristics of Arctic tourism. The Northern tourist routes in Kargopol or in Kenozersky National Park, Vologda, Kizhi, Krasnoyarsk, Vladivostok - for all its fascination and value perception do not incur a charge also drive (motivation, needs, emotions, inner desire, pleasure), which gives the Arctic tourism. Prices vary at the northern and Arctic tourism, but there are other differences.

To distinguish between these two concepts — Arctic and Northern tourism — we can and should agree on the following probation. Conditionally because consumer travel services determinants are quality of service, price, attractiveness and all, already described above, rather than scientific or official name of one or other kind of tourism. *Arctic tourism* refers only to the Russian Arctic, including land area and water area of the AZRF, of the northern seas. *Northern tourism* covers all territories of the far north of Russia, except for those which are currently (2016) the land territories of the AZRF defined by the Decree of the President of the Russian Federation from May 2, 2014. Cruise, sightseeing tours in northern seas, islands are defined solely as Arctic tourism products. And we need to localize in mind the territorial tourism.

Obviously, this is a critical need for a well-defined and legitimate scientific and practical definition of the object of research, which involves the clarification of concepts such as the Arctic, Arctic zone of the Russian Federation, the Russian Arctic, Arctic, North of Russia. The need for such operational concepts exists not only in science but also in politics, economics, state and municipal management, law, organization of tourism. Often deal with these concepts without a clear understanding of their meaning and application boundaries, which distorts the essence of the subject. The relevance of the distinction between the concepts of "Arctic tourism" and "tourism", demand-driven science, practice, geopolitics.

---

<sup>2</sup> BART. URL: <http://www.pomorland.pro/mezhdunarodnoe-sotrudnichestvo-proekty/proekt-gosudarstvenno-chastnoe-partnerstvo-v-sfere-turizma-v-barentsevom-regione-bart/> (Accessed: 10 Februaryy 2016).

### *Arctic and North as an object of interdisciplinary research*

The Arctic etymologically derives from the Greek “arktikos” — “North”, “arctos” — “bear”, associated with the stars and occupies a unique geographical position. This is a single geographical area adjacent to the North Pole, which is composed of the water area of the seas AO, numerous islands and archipelagos, as well as coastal areas three continents — Europe, Asia and North America, as a result, this region is called the “polar Mediterranean”. Exhaustive grounds for defining the boundaries of the Arctic are several interrelated approaches: 1) Arctic Circle — 66° 33'44.6" North latitude; 2) Differentiation of landscapes, zoning, tundra, forest-tundra, taiga; 3) July isotherm +10<sup>0</sup>; criteria for Nordenskjold, the magnitude of the radiation balance; 4) discomfort of human activity at high latitudes: health, harsh natural conditions (low temperatures, snow, frost, polar night, wind, humidity); 5) internal territorial-administrative boundaries of regions, municipalities of Arctic States; 6) ethnic and cultural landscape, indigenous rights, cultural and environmental history traditions; 7) thalassocracy, an outlet to the sea in the Arctic Ocean, any part of its land; 8) rise in labour costs, costs of production, the depreciation of fixed assets; 9) quality of life, social cohesion, human capital accumulation and use.

Even in the Arctic of the 21<sup>st</sup> century remains “Terra Incognita” — uncharted ground. Although more specifically talking about Earth (Terra) in the literal sense, not about the Earth's land, and the great water-territorial Circumpolar (surrounding the North Pole) space, a significant time of the year it is covered with ice. If Arctic limit is from the South of the Arctic Circle, then its area equals 21 million km<sup>2</sup>. If southern boundary coincides with the southern border of the Arctic tundra, in this case, its area is about 27 million km<sup>2</sup>. Territories and zone concepts are used: Arctic, Subarktika and Gipoarktika. On the nature of the vegetation of the Arctic territories: they are divided into zones: tundra, forest tundra area and polar deserts. Tundra zone area includes sub-zones: the southern, typical and Arctic tundra.

The eight Arctic countries took more than 26% of the world's land surface; are home to 7.4% of the total population of the global society (2012); they produce 29.2% of GDP in the world in 77.8 trillion U.S. dollars (2014) according to the World Bank database. If you take geopolitical, but only the regional dimension, the number of permanently resident population North of the Arctic Circle, in is low: 2.5 million in the Russian Arctic and 2.1 million in the remaining seven countries combined (2012)<sup>3</sup>. In the conceptual and theoretical level, *Arctic interdisciplinary model* generally includes: ter-

---

<sup>3</sup> Lukin Yu. Rossiyskaya Arctica v izmenyayuschemsya mire: monografiya. Arkhangelsk: IPC SAFU, 2013. S.28—29.

ritory and waters of the Arctic, natural and cultural landscape, geopolitical, cultural, economic, social space, and, of course, the history of the discovery and development of the Arctic region.

**Arctic zone of the Russian Federation**, its legitimate status, composition, the waters and land, how to make changes while not legally defined (2016). Neither the USSR nor in the Russian Federation, despite repeated attempts, it is not possible to adopt a law to legitimize the AZRF, including not only land, but also the water area of the northern seas, sailing through the waters of the AO, the concept of airspace in the Russian Arctic has started recently by historical standards, it was found 22.04.1989 the decision of the Commission of the USSR Council of Ministers at the Arctic. The Decree of the President of Russia from May 2, 2014 concerned land. Outside left in the uncertain situation of the Barents, White, Kara, Laptev, East Siberian, Bering, and Chukchi seas.

**“Russian Arctic** , in my understanding, is the internal maritime waters, exclusive economic zone, waters of the Barents, White, Kara, Laptev, East Siberian, Chukchi, Bering Sea, the continental shelf, in accordance with the UN Convention on the law of the sea; the waters of the Northern sea route as the historic national transport communication of the Russian Federation; all discovered here, and may be discovered in the future; land and Islands, located in the Arctic Ocean; inland northern territories of the subjects of the Russian Federation and Municipal formations on the coast of the northern seas, with exits to the water areas of the Arctic Ocean, the Russian State security; airspace”.



Figure 1. The AZRF map / Lukin Yu.F., Eremin E.S., 2011

*Far North* includes the entire Arctic, and the Arctic called only a part of the northern territories and waters. In the public administration of the USSR — the RF concept far North used since 1930 biennium till now.



Figure 2. Far North areas of Russia. URL: <http://meridian12.ru/wp-content/uploads/2014/04/север-России.gif>

Definitely there needs to be a clear legal distinction between concepts of Russian Arctic, AZRF, far North, North Russia, understanding their functions, improving enforcement practices. Then it will be clearer what the territory attributed to the Arctic, and what — to the North, how best to manage them. The Arctic, as bright and Ultima star, always beckoning travelers, tourists, heroes, romantics, polar explorers, scientists, entrepreneurs, military, fascinated, froze and not stopped by itself never. The northern territories of the country, including land area AZRF, now need not only laws, but also new jobs, modern infrastructure, social stability and unity, *ekonomičeskij* growth, practical transition to a "green economy." The emergence of tourism as a sector of the economy in the long term can provide a positive impact on the socio-economic development of the Russian Arctic.

#### ***National ranking: place of tourism in the regions in the Russian Arctic***

In the 21<sup>st</sup> century, tourism became an essential sector of the global economy. More than one billion tourists every year travel to other countries. The tourism became the leading economic

sector, which accounts for 10% of global GDP and 6% of total world exports"<sup>4</sup>. Tourism is a valuable source of livelihood for millions of people, providing one in every eleven jobs in the world. These figures demonstrate not only economic, but also indicate a large potential and growing tourism's ability to meet the challenges of socio-economic growth, inclusive development and preservation of the environment, on that focuses the activities of the World Tourism Organization<sup>5</sup>. The economic importance of tourism is supplemented by its global humanitarian contribution to the development of good-neighbourly relations between the countries, the philosophy of kindness, understanding of the world, great opportunities in the area of intercultural relations and communication. Underlining the importance of tourism for Russia, n. Andronova, Vice President of UNWTO, celebrated his force capable to combine our immense multi-ethnic country, promote positive changes in the interests of all Russians, creation of new jobs, investment projects. At the same time, according to world trends, the development of domestic tourism is very much encourages the development of inbound tourism. Because the countries that develop host domestic tourism, and where people know and love their Motherland, promote, offer new facilities, programs become interesting to people from other countries. As the saying goes, "love yourself and you will be loved by the whole world" [5]. To understand the role of Arctic tourism economy, the comparative analysis of the activity of subjects of the Russian Federation in this area is of interest.

National rating of 85 tourism subjects of the Russian Federation was prepared and for the first time published in December, 2015 by Information communication center «Rating» together with the magazine "Holiday in Russia» [5]. The quantitative and qualitative assessment of the regions was made by 9 criteria: 1) the level of development of tourist business (per capita: total number of beds in hotels; the number of people employed in tourism); 2) turnover of tourist services (amount of rubles earned in tourism — to every inhabitant of the region); 3) region's popularity among Russians (the number of overnight stays in hotels); 4) region's popularity among foreigners (the number of overnight stays in hotels); 5) tourism rating attractions and uniqueness (resorts — according to UNESCO, media and expert estimates); 6) ecological health of the region; 7) crime situation (number of crimes per 1,000 inhabitants); 8) development of transport and social infrastructure, the supply of cultural objects; 9) The popularity of the region as a tourism brand on

---

<sup>4</sup> Odin milliard turistov — odin milliard vozmozhnostej: Poslanie po sluchayu Vsemirnogo dnja turizma 2015 goda General'nogo sekretarya Vsemirnoj turistskoj organizacii Taleba Rifai. URL: <http://www.khorsun.ru/16/01/1710/27184/> (Accessed: 08 December 2015).

<sup>5</sup> UNWTO is a special structure of the UN which ensures the development of tourism as a driving force of economic development and social progress, aims at promoting tourism as a tool to reach the millennium goals of the UN. In the UNWTO there are 156 states, 7 territories and about 450 associated members. URL: <http://www.worldtravelbiz.ru/news/286479> 183 (Accessed: 08 December 2015)

the Internet (number of queries in search engines, the number of publications in Russian and English). The study took into account the views of the representatives of the expert community, professional media group "leisure in Russia" (a self-titled magazine, information portals "Russian tourism" and "investment in tourism"). For each of the criteria — based on the analysis of open sources and departmental statistics — an appropriate ranking was conducted and produced 9 tables and pivot. The first place giving 8.5 points per each subsequent place filmed by 0.1 points. *Ranking in the first group* was composed of 16 regions, scored more than 50 points and occupying places from 1 to 16, including Krasnodar region, St. Petersburg, Moscow, Crimea, Moscow and Kaliningrad oblast, Karelia, Tatarstan, Primorskiy Kray, etc. Tourism development is a priority. In *the second group* of national rankings included 49 members of the Russian Federation, scored from 30 to 50 points in this group region comprises three in AZRF fully all its territory: Murmansk oblast, Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, Yamal. 4 subjects of the Russian Federation have AZRF their municipalities: Krasnoyarsk Krai, Yakutia, Arkhangelsk Oblast, Komi Republic). The *third* trailing group rankings are 20 regions with less than 30 credits, including NAO.

The tourist rating of the Russian Arctic regions with the addition of individual subjects connected northern Russia bordering its coast to the northern seas (except land KHMAO), compiled on the basis of the first national ranking of tourism (2015), is as follows:

Table 1

Place in national rankings 2015	The subjects of the RUSSIAN FEDERATION and municipal entities included in land territories AZRF by Decree of the President of the Russian Federation from May 2, 2014 No. 296 exhibiting regions of the far north of Russia	Score	Place the Arctic rating
<b>Russian Arctic</b>			
30	Murmansk oblast	43.0	1
38	Krasnoyarsk Krai: the city of Norilsk, Taymyr Dolgano-nenetsky district municipal Turukhansky district (Igarka)	40.7	2
42	Arkhangelskaya oblast: Arkhangelsk City "mo", "Mezensky City District", "new land", "the town of Novodvinsk", "Onega LL", "Seaside LL", "Severodvinsk" Islands in the Arctic Ocean	39.6	3
52	Chukotka Autonomous Okrug	34.2	4
54	Komi: MO's District of Vorkuta	33.5	5
58	Republic of Sakha (Yakutia): Allaikhoivskiy ulus (Raion) anabarskiy national (dolgano-Evenki) ulus (Raion), Bulunskiy ulus (Raion), Nizhnekolymsky district, Ust-Yanskiy ulus (Raion)	32.1	6
62	Yamalo-Nenets Autonomous Okrug	30.9	7
72	Nenets Autonomous Okrug	27.2	8

North Russia		
7	The Republic Of Karelia	56.0
18	Kamchatka Krai	49.5
37	Magadanskaya oblast '	41.0
51	Khanty-Mansi Autonomous Okrug — Yugra	34.4

All regions are in the middle of the AZRF national ranking of tourism, where the leader is the Murmansk region. Located in the third, trailing group at 72-85 places among the subjects of the Russian Federation. Yamal- Nenets Autonomous district, occupying 62, also it is not notable in the field of tourism. For many of the subjects of the RF in the third group are characterized by a low standard of living, low incomes, poor infrastructure. In this regard, YANAO has better living standards, but less developed infrastructure and transport accessibility. indicators of the Krasnoyarsk region, Arkhangelsk Oblast, Komi Republic, Republic of Sakha (Yakutia), obviously, are bol'šej not to the Arctic and the Northern tourism, given that the subjects of Russia consists of the only partially AZRF at the level of individual municipalities. In the management of tourism its crucial multiplier effect. The emerging new tourist centers are becoming regional growth points in regions of the Russian North. "The Tourism sphere, like an umbrella, covers many other sectors of the economy, and this multiplicative effect every year will mean more. Many regions have the opportunity to add dramatically. However, infrastructure is necessary to restore the reputation of a safe region, that too will take years ", — considers O. Chyzhov [5]. Cash flows today really flowing behind tourists. A key challenge becomes *transport accessibility and price of tourism products* that superaktual'no to the development of tourism in the Arctic (NAO, YANAO, Taymyr Island, an island in the AO). "And here two aspects are important. Primarily, the *price and the amount of transportation costs* in the total value of the package, which are often the main factor in the refusal of travel across Russia. Secondly, it is a condition of transportation infrastructure, first, roadside service, servicing large passenger flows "[5].

### ***The tourist potential of the regions of the Russian Arctic***

The results of the assessment and comparative analysis shows that the huge tourist potential of Russian regions of the Arctic have not yet been used in full force and effect. The opportunities for the development of different types of tourism has ***the Murmansk region***, where they develop: sport fishing and hunting; environmental, water, mountain, mineralogical tourism; climbing, downhill skiing, diving, hiking, skiing and cycling. Here you can relax in the wild parts of the Taiga and tundra, on the banks of the very cleanest rivers. There are historical monuments and museums in the stake, Kirovsk, Pechenga, geological Museum in Apatity. Near Umba, Ponoâ and Har-

lovki discovered several ancient labyrinths-vavilonov. At Rybachiy Peninsula in the middle reaches of the river of Ponoa, on the Kanozero, stone age rock paintings are found. There are well known Sami monuments at Imandre, Sámi Museum of history and life in the village of Lovozero, sacred Sámi places: mountains, lakes, rivers and islands. The main monuments of Russian pomors are on the Tersky coast of the White Sea. The most famous of them is a wooden church of the assumption in village Varzuga is the tent-roofed shrine, typical for the Russian northern architecture, which preserved the ancient carved iconostasis. Since July 2012 in Murmansk, there are construction works on the reconstruction of the pier long-haul lines maritime station within the framework of the project "Arctic Harbour for cruise ships and ferries. Comprehensive plan to prepare is for the 100-year anniversary of the city of Murmansk for 2012-2016 included activities for more than 28 billion<sup>6</sup>. Also there are some cruise ship arrivals engaged in Murmansk tour operator company "Nordmorservis travel" activities. Moscow company "Travelogue" holds cruises on chartered Russian courts since 2010. Analysis on the tourism products is offered for 2016. It shows predomination of cruises to Greenland and Svalbard.

Table 2

<i>Date, cruise</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Vessel</i>	<i>Cost</i>
24 may — June 1, 2016 Svalbard	9 days	Quest	from \$ 5 690
13 June — 20 June "The secrets of the White Sea"	8 days	Silver Explorer	from \$ 9 250
23 June — July 5, 2016 "Around Spitsbergen»	13 days	Sea Adventurer	from \$ 7 295
03 August — August 16, 2016 Sea cruise to the West Greenland	14 days	L ' Austral	from \$ 7 170

Source: Special Travel Club. URL : <http://www.specialtravelclub.ru/kruizy/arktika>

Special offers in 2016 — cruises to the West coast of Greenland, the southern and Northern Spitsbergen; 10 cruises around Spitsbergen; 5 cruises to the North Pole with a visit to Franz Josef land (price of tours from \$ 26 995 to \$ 27 995 on the icebreaker "50 years of victory"); 3 tours along the Northern sea route (from \$ 19 800 up to 29 995) on the vessels of "Kapitan Khlebnikov", "Akademik Shokalsky"; 1 tour along the North-Western sea route (\$ 695). What will be the real demand in 2016 on these cruises — remains to be seen. Cost of tours for Russian groups in the Arctic in the face of runaway ruble devaluation it seems quite high, calculated on a segment of people with high incomes. Of course, that the high cost of marine cruises depending on the tour operator, vessel, comfort class cabin (s), and duration of travel objectively hampered the development of Arctic tourism for many social groups in Russia.

<sup>6</sup> URL: <http://new.gov-murman.ru/info/news/881/> (Accessed: 16 December 2015).

In *the Arkhangelsk region* more than 10 thousand monuments of architecture, archaeology, history and culture, including 1 421 monument of Federal significance. More than 150 tourist routes, guided tours, interactive and informative programs are implemented. Development of tourism here seems very promising business. In 2014 on the territory of the region there were registered 136 tourist enterprises (including travel agents and tour operators). If in 2012 Arkhangelsk region was visited by 338.1 thousand people, in 2013 — 379.5 thousand, people in 2014 — 390.8 thousand. Leaders in terms of income taxes and fees from enterprises in tourism in 2014 were Arkhangelsk-58.5 million rub. and Severodvinsk is 35.2 million rub. included in the AZRF<sup>7</sup>. Ports of Arkhangelsk region in 2015, took 23 of the cruise. Evolving rural, cultural, educational, children's, medical and other kinds of Northern tourism, including social. In 2014, tours were organized on the field for 33 thousand students; museums of regional significance have visited more than 110 thousand children.

Popular international tours are present in the National Park "Russian Arctic". In 2011, the Russian Arctic "visited 865, in 2012 — 1005, in 2013 — 688, in 2014 — 738 people [6, p. 123]. In the summer of 2015, there were 1 225 visitors from 41 countries, which has become a record of attendance for all time of the existence of institutions<sup>8</sup>. Traditionally, most visitors are from China — 277 people or 23%. Tourists from Russia amounted to the total number of only 6%. Of the 11 cruise in 2015 seven was committed to the North Pole with a stop at Franz Josef Land (FJL) at the Atomic icebreaker "50 years of victory"; the three — on motor ship "Sea Spirit" on a route from Svalbard — Franz Josef land — Svalbard. Another flight on a cruise ship, "Bremen", was run along the Northern sea route with a stop at Cape Zhelaniya Novaya Zemlya and Franz Josef Land. with a view to facilitating the registration of foreign ships with tourists from other countries visiting turistskiMI State territory goals for the nature reserve of Federal significance "Franz Josef land, Russia and Mintrans of Russia have made changes in changes in boundaries of the Arkhangelsk seaport, setting its external RAID in North Bay, Gulf, island, Dezhnev Zemlya Aleksandry, on the archipelago of Franz Josef land, precipitating border procedures. "Now we organize permanent customs checkpoint in Arkhangelsk. In addition, we are studying the potential use of military airfield under construction on the island of Zemlya Aleksandry for civilian purposes, to deliver tourists", — said the Director of the National Park "Russian Arctic" R. Ershov, 22.12.2015<sup>9</sup>.

<sup>7</sup> Informaciya o sostoyanii turistskoj otrasli Arhangel'skoj oblasti v 2012—2015 godax. URL: [http://www.pomorland.travel/upload/files/statistika\\_2012\\_2015\\_1.pdf](http://www.pomorland.travel/upload/files/statistika_2012_2015_1.pdf) (Accessed: 04 January 2016)

<sup>8</sup> Russkaya Arktika: nacional'nyj park (sajt). URL: <http://www.rus-arc.ru/ru/Tourism/Statistics> (Accessed: 02 January 2016).

<sup>9</sup> Voennyj aerodrom na Zemle Franca-Iosifa rasschityvayut ispolzovat dlya dostavki turistov/ Mokrov K. URL: <http://www.dvinainform.ru/economy/2015/12/22/38887.html> (Accessed: 02 January 2016). Bigger popularity of cruises to Russian polar islands makes it possible to decrease the prices from 300 to 750 thousand roubles.

These tourism objects are included in the the list of the world cultural and natural heritage UNESCO. From 26 Russian cultural and natural sites by UNESCO three belong to turproducts of the Arctic tourism, and the four are related to the North tourism: 1) cultural and historic ensemble of the solovetsky Islands since 1992; 2) Wrangel Island in the Chukchi autonomous district since 2004; 3) Putorana plateau in Krasnoyarsk region since 2010; 4) Kizhi Pogost in the Republic of Karelia since 1990; 5) Virgin Komi forests, Northern Urals, 1995; 6) the Lena pillars in Khangalassky ulus of Sakha (Yakutia) Republic since 2012 7) volcanoes of Kamchatka in the Kamchatka Krai since 1996.

Solovetsky Island and Wrangel Island, located in the waters of the Arctic Ocean, undoubtedly is one of the most attractive objects in the sea cruise tourism. Tourism in Solovki began to develop at the end of 60-s years of XX century, when there was created the Solovetsky Museum-reserve (1967). The Solovetsky archipelago, as well as five kilometers of waters of the White Sea, are included in the Spa-fgu Solovki State historical-architectural and natural museum-reserve ». In its operational management is more than 1000 items of cultural and natural heritage in the framework of the Mesolithic (V Millennium B.C.) to the present day<sup>10</sup>.

The State currently holds a modernization of the entire infrastructure of Solovki, including HPF. Unfortunately, superprivlekatel'nye even in the 20th century cruises from Arkhangelsk on Solovki and not revived until the present time.

In the Arctic islands, Wrangel and Herald in *the Chukotka Autonomous District* operates the first Arctic reserve of Russia (1976). They were brought here from the island of Nunavik. Here is a unique place of concentration of ancestral polar bear den, white goose colonies, herds of reindeer, walrus rookeries.

In the development of the Arctic, tourism has not been fully exploited the possibilities of the existing resource potential of especially protected natural territories (spnt). Practically, each subject of the Russian Arctic, Northern Russia have their own potential and prospects for the development of different types of tourism, using huge potential of protected areas as a key framework for these activities<sup>11</sup>.

The following table shows the EPNTS as directly related to the Russian Arctic and SPNA part of conjugated with AZRF actors North Russia part of the above-mentioned SPNT North has direct access to the sea and the prospects for the development of marine tourism. State natural biosphere reserve "Komandorskiy" named after S.V. Marakov, for example, is the largest nature reserve of Russia. Area protected sea area of over 3 million hectares that is territory of Belgium. The

<sup>10</sup> URL: <http://www.solovky.ru/reserve/today/> (Accessed: 28 March.2016).

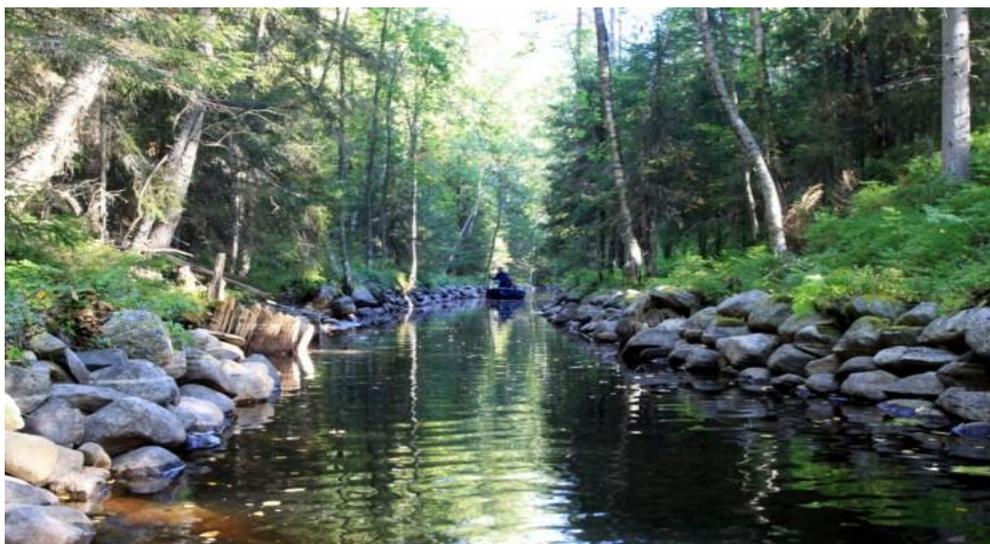
<sup>11</sup> Katalog OOPT Rossii. URL: <http://news.zapoved.ru/katalog-oopt/> (Accessed: 11 February 2016).

only place in the country where every year and hosts year-round observation of cetaceans<sup>12</sup>. Among the sea of SPNT so far appeared newly created in 2013. "Beringia" National Park with a total area of 1.8 million hectares. Under international protection there are twelve of the fifteen cetaceans. Greenland and grey whales are distributed to native quota International Whaling Commission indigenous people of Chukotka — the Inuit and Chukchi. Known archeological monuments — "Whale Alley" Eagle "Pajpel'gak housing Ekven», but more than 200 are still stored in a mystery thousands of years waiting for archaeologists and ethnographers. Sea gradually picks up with this piece of material culture<sup>13</sup> on the coast of the White Sea was created and operates the National Park" pomorye "Onega (2013).



Figure 4. Solovky islands: Gologofa; channels between the lakes

URL: <http://solovki-monastyr.ru/abbey/revival/>; <http://fogelman.ru/posts/2013/11/8807?ocom=60228>



<sup>12</sup> Komandorsky. URL: <http://komandorsky.ru/about.html> (Accessed: 28 February 2016).

<sup>13</sup> Beringiya. URL: <http://park-beringia.ru> (Accessed: 06 February 2016).



Figure 5. Vrangal island – the UNESCO object

Table 3

No	SPNT: NPs, SNRs and NRs and reserves	Established
<b>Russian Arctic</b>		
<b>Murmansk Region</b>		
1	“Kandalsksha State Natural Reserve”	1992
2	Lapland State Natural Reserve	1930
3	State Natural Reserve “Pasvik”	1992
<b>Arkhangelsk Region</b>		
4	National Park “Russian Arctic”	2010
5	National Park “Onegskoe Pomorie”	2013
6	State natural reserve of the federal significance “Frants Josef Land”	1994
<b>Nenets Autonomous distric</b>		
7	State Natural Reserve “Nenetsky”	1997
8	Regional Natural Reserve “Vaigach”	2007
9	State natural reserve of the federal significance “Nenetsky”	1985
<b>Komi Republic</b>		
10	National Park “Ugid Va”	1994
<b>Yamal-Nenets Autonomous distric of the Tumen Region</b>		
11	State Natural Reserve “Gidansky”	1996
12	“Verhne-Tazovsky natural reserve”	1986

<b>Krasnoyarsk Krai</b> <sup>14</sup>		
13	Federal Reserve "Great Arctic"	1993
14	Federal Reserve "Taimyr"	1979
15	Federal Reserve "Putoransky"	1988
<b>Republic of Sakha (Yakutia)</b>		
16	Reserve "Ust-Lensky" ( Tiksi)	1985
<b>Chukotsky Aitonomous District</b>		
17	National Park "Beringia"	2013
18	Federal Reserve "Wrangel Island"	1976
<b>Northern Russia</b>		
<b>Arkhangelsk Region</b>		
1	"Kenozersky" National Park	1991
2	State Nature Reserve "Pinezhsky"	1974
<b>Vologda REGION</b>		
3	National Park "Russian North"	1992
4	"Darwinsky" State Reserve	2003
<b>Republic of Karelia</b>		
5	"Vodlozersky" National Park (in Karelia and Arkhangelsk Region)	1991
6	National Park "Kalevala"	2006
7	National Park "Paanajärvi"	1992
8	State Reserve "Kivach"	1931
<b>Komi Republic</b>		
9	State Biosphere Reserve "Pechora-Iliychsky"	1930
<b>Khanti-Mansi Autonomous district</b>		
10	Reserve "Yugansky"	1982
11	State Nature Reserve "Upper Kondinsky»	1971
<b>Krasnoyarsky Krai</b>		
12	National Park "Shushensky Bor"	1995
13	State natural reserve "Pillars"	1925
14	State Nature Biosphere Reserve "Sayano-Shushenskaya"	1976
15	Reserve" Tunguska	1995
16	State Nature Biosphere Reserve "Tsentralnosibirsky»	1985
<b>The Republic of Sakha (Yakutia)</b>		
17	Natural Park "Lena Pillars"	1995
18	State Nature Reserve "Olekminsk»	1984
<b>Magadan Region</b>		
19	National Park "Magadan"	1982
<b>Kamchatka Krai</b>		
20	State Reserve "Koryak"	1995
21	"Kronotsky" State Nature Biosphere Reserve	1934
22	State Nature Biosphere Reserve "Commander"	1993

The main attraction of the Northern tourism in the *Republic of Komi* are considered "Virgin Komi forests", including square Pechora-Ilytchsky biosphere State biosphere reserve and "Ugid Va" National Park, as well as their buffer and security zone. Included in the first Russian natural heritage object "Virgin Komi forests"<sup>15</sup>. Komi Republic recently got the Arctic status and linked the "Silver ring of Russia", which is a system of regional and interregional routes with the overall strat-

<sup>14</sup> FGBU «Obedinennaya direkciya zapovednikov Tajmyra» (Bolshoj Arkticheskij, Tajmyrskij, Putoranskij, zakaznik Purinskij) is in Norilsk.

<sup>15</sup> Ugid Va. URL: <http://www.yugydva.komi.com/?news=778.htm> (Accessed: 28 February 2016)

egy for socio-economic development and organization of tourism and recreation in the North-Western Federal District<sup>16</sup>.

In *Nenets Autonomous Okrug*, Vaygach island nature reserve — unique "sacred island" of Nenets people, where indigenous peoples worshipped their gods, ask them "permission" to fish and beast. Many of the sanctuary of Vajgach have more ancient history (Nenets inhabited island in 10-11 centuries). For centuries this place was a cross for the path of many peoples of the North, Siberia and Eastern Europe, there have been foundings dated back to III-II centuries B.C. hidden in a mix of valleys, rocky islands and difficult Vaygach coast. However, as already noted, the limiting factor of tourism development in the NAO is the low level of infrastructure development, road transport network. The main and only transport, as in many other subjects AZRF, remains an expensive aircraft. Possessing considerable tourist potential Naryan-Mar has not managed to fully transform the objects in the available regional tourism products. Positive steps in this direction are made in 2015, conducted promotional tours "discover your Arctic". The tourist information portal of the district appeared mobile tourist guide that has its competitive advantages in the face of growing interest in tourism and planning the route with your own gadget.

Permanent work in the Northern tourism lead the authorities and management of *Republic Of Sakha (Yakutia)* where the annual flow of tourists is still only around 150 thousand people. Promoting the image of this Republic as a region favourable for tourism, engaged tourist informational and analitic Portal "Horsun Travel" its mission is attracting the largest number of tourists to profit and replenish local budgets through taxation of subjects of tourist business. It attracts tourists from all over the world nature park "Lena pillars", which is located at the junction of three Botanico-geographical regions: Krasnoyarsk forest-steppe, mountain Taiga of Eastern Sayan and podtajga Middle-Siberian plateau with a total area of 1.3 million hectares<sup>17</sup>. Attractive project Rostourism and Yakutia authorities an organization becomes *Diamond tours* -sightseeing tours in the region at the expense of buying jewelry<sup>18</sup>. Tourists can visit jewelry factory show is cut gemstones and manufacture jewelry Brilliantovye tours will pay off if the total cost of a plane ticket and accommodation (2-3 days) per guest (s) will be a maximum of 40 thousand rubles. While tourists per trip must purchase diamonds for at least 200 thousand rubles. Only then, the trip will pay off. Such tourism is designed mostly to wealthy foreign and domestic tourists.

---

<sup>16</sup> Komi voshla v «Serebryanoe kol'co Rossii» v kachestve arkticheskogo zvena. URL: <http://komiinform.ru/news/131307/> Accessed: 07 March 2016).

<sup>17</sup> Sajt prirodnogo parka «Lenskie stolby» URL: <http://www.lenskiestolby.ru/posts/view.aspx?id=130> (Accessed: 06 February 2016).

<sup>18</sup> Rosturizm prodvigaet brilliantovye tury v Yakutiyu. 02.10.2015. URL: <http://www.khorsun.ru/6/01/1711/27215/> (Accessed: 12 December 2015).

In general, while praising the existing strategic long-term development opportunities of the Arctic tourist business, it is necessary to take into account the optimal capacity of the SPNTs to taking too many tourists from all over the world from the perspective of ecology. It is very important not to harm nature, does not destroy the unique natural and cultural sites, not the high level of ecological education and culture a part of tourists. Therefore, the administrations of the SPNTs is rightly imposed all sorts of restrictions, is governed by the number and behavior of tourists and pilgrims. Visit requires special attention of impact areas, environmental hot spots. It is also very important to ensure the safety of tourists.

One of the main problems hampering the development of tourism in the northern territories is their inaccessibility, high prices for transport services. Prior to Norilsk, for example, can be reached from the port of Dudinka or fly to Noril'sk aircraft, and from there on the Putorana plateau. Hour of flight in an airplane in Northern region, where the object is located under UNESCO's Putorana plateau, recently was worth 200 thousand rubles. In addition, Norilsk industrial-environmental industrial area is one of the most polluted, impact of the Arctic. However, not so far is a unique Putoranskij State nature reserve (68<sup>0</sup> n), which combines within its territory of sub-arctic and Arctic zone, taiga, tundra and Arctic wilderness. There are more than 25 thousand lakes that make up the largest reservoir of fresh water after the Lake Baikal in Siberia and are very similar to the Norwegian fjords, only among land, many waterfalls, including the highest in Russia (108 m). They are attractive places for tourists and there is something else to see, but rather expensive.

#### ***Opportunities and threats for tourism development in the Arctic region and in Northern Russia***

The possibility of tourism activities are largely existing in the market for real proposals of those or other tourism products and their demand. Map of economic sciences, Professor A.V. Shevchuk shows localization and marked the most different kinds of tourism, which are cultivated in Arctic regions and Northern Russia: cultural-history-social, environmental, natural, ethnographic, maritime, event-entertainer, hunting, ski, fishing; boat tours sailing trips, rafting — sport rafting on inflatable vessels — rafts.

Analyzing the opinions of experts, managers, tourism professionals, you can select multiple strategic opportunities for tourism development in the Arctic region and in northern Russia (Arctic and Northern tourism).

1. a huge tourist potential, the diversity of natural and cultural resources to meet the needs of different categories of visitors while creating tourist products, organization of tours, cruises, excursions.



Figure 6. Tourism map / Shevchuk A.V., St. Petersburg, November 2014.

2. the unique flora and fauna of the army of the northern territories, the Arctic islands and waters of the Arctic Ocean allows implementing attractive tourist routes, sea cruises with demonstrations of wild animals in natural conditions (polar bears, walruses, birds ' bazaars, etc.).

3. the existing network of national parks, nature reserves and sanctuaries, the presence of world cultural and natural heritage, UNESCO promotes the attraction reference model (attractiveness) tourist products, the development of tourism.

4. the upward trend in consumer interest in ecological, ethnographical, dispute-Executive, amateur, maritime and other types of tourism in the Arctic and Northern Russia both by foreign and domestic tourists.

5. the development of social tourism in the constituent entities of the Russian Arctic and North Russia while ensuring adequate financing.

6. the establishment of the Arctic tourist cluster, including infrastructure, services, involving third-party investors; modernization of the existing tourism facilities, SPNTs of all forms of ownership; advertising, information support, marketing and promotion of tourism products on the domestic and foreign markets; facilitating the integration and establishment of partner relations of regions, cities, tourist operators, reserves with Russian and foreign tourist companies, other organizations interested in the development of tourism in the Arctic ("Arctic tourism development strategy up to 2030").

7. modernization of the transport infrastructure, roads and transport, maritime and river transport, ports and berths, optimal functioning network, railways in the far North, new airports in the Russian Arctic, including dual use ones, new possibilities for the future development of the regional economy, including the tourism industry.

8. the creation in Russia of a National Arctic background tourism information system (NASIST): natural, historical and cultural sites, protected areas, tourist routes, sea cruises, maps, services and advertisements — electronically using the power of the GLONASS satellite constellation, space system "Arktika", fiber-optic communications and resources, Federal Agency for tourism (Rosstourism), tour operators and travel agencies, both Russian and foreign.

9. a legitimate system of interaction of tour operators and travel agents in the Arctic region and in northern Russia with the regional structures of the Federal service of Hydrometeorology and monitoring of environment, the Ministry of the RF for civil defence, emergencies and elimination of consequences of natural disasters, Russian FSB border customs offices of the Federal Customs Service and other agencies.

10. motivation and activity of federal and regional authorities, municipalities, business, Arctic northern societies in developing tourism as a promising sector of the regional economy, modern infrastructure, logistics in the Arctic and in northern Russia.

11. in order to realize the potential of tourism in a single region of the Arctic and North Russia needs: an assessment of possibilities, a clear understanding of the most promising strategic resources; development of the program of development of tourism in the region, making changes in accordance with the real situation and challenges of time; create attractive and popular regional tourism products; investors; optimal and affordable logistics; competent marketing policy and promotion of tourism products [5].

Among the threats, risks, effective development of tourism industries in the Arctic and in the North of Russia can be marked with the following:

1) Legal uncertainty, illegitimacy status AZRF (land), in the Russian Arctic (aquatorium + land) currently (2016).

2) the AZRF actors have a significant potential for the development of Arctic tourism, insufficient use of market mechanisms and management in order to convert the existing resources in a competitive tourist product liquid, apparently yielding regions of southern and Central Russia.

3) in part actors and municipalities AZRF no systematic approach and doable program of development of tourism, noting the low level of management of this sector of the economy at the regional and municipal levels, the lack of professionally trained specialists.

4) not always correctly used the domestic potential cruise tourism on the sea aquatorium of the Northern sea route, to the North Pole, the Arctic islands in the Arctic Ocean, the Solovki in the White Sea, Wrangel Island taking into account environmental and economic balance, the cost of the tours.

5) Relevant not only to the construction of icebreakers at domestic shipyards, but also investment, design, construction of the most modern vessels for tourist business ice class, which you can use on sea routes in harsh conditions as Arctic and Antarctic regions at different times of the year.

6) product on the world market are not effectively carried out promotion of Russian Federal national parks, nature reserves and other protected areas of world natural and cultural heritage of UNESCO.

7) quality tourist service (classification of hotels, guides and interpreters, transport) in Arctic regions and the far north of Russia. Not always enough professionalism, sense of hospitality and order, pride in the place where we live.

8) domestic demand, especially in times of crisis, on expensive Arctic tourism products constrain its development because of the basic lack of funds and a decline in the standard of living of a large part of the population of Russia. While the Russian State, its vedoistva, the subjects of the Russian Federation has not sufficiently supports the social, ecological, cultural and historical domestic tourism in the Arctic and the far north of Russia, including children, youth, students and pensioners.

9) on the development of inbound tourism adversely affects the duration of the procedures, time limits for foreigners. Foreign tourists visit Arctic islands, seaports requires registration passes in the border zone, the customs control. Practically not applied electronic visa, as practised, for example, Cyprus, where you can get it for one day via email.

10) State and business still not invested investment to create a modern tourism infrastructure in the Arctic and the far north of Russia, including the modernization of ports and marinas, airports, construction of new modern hotels. Regions, especially municipalities, often do not have the necessary financial resources.

11) admission of tourists on the territory of traditional indigenous use of the North bears the very real threat of the invasion of his current lifestyle, consumer culture, formation of unjustified illusions market motivation [7, c. 48].

12) many experts point to the lack of generally valid (reliable) and verified information about the Russian tourist products, including of course and the Arctic.

One of the subjective threats at the mental level accurately noticed in Ivanov: "for rapid, dynamic development of the inner tourism we lack a sense of pride for a place in which we live, firmness and unity in defending their interests and positions. We've been living with illegals who create

intolerable competition, firms-one-dnevkami. We are not fighting for his future — don't want to train professionals, guides, guides-translators, because we are afraid to invest in them, and suddenly they will go to another company? We don't grab a sense of hospitality and order that should be raised in families "[5]. Poor quality of service in the field, has often found low levels of professionalism and management in the area of domestic tourism, high, not always justified, prices hamper the overall development of the inner tourism. The purchasing power of the population of Russia fell in the midst of a double devaluation of the ruble and rising prices. Russians increasingly begin to save money on your vacation in one of the interviews I conducted innvare 2016, answers the question "What expenses you cut first?" as follows: 1) travel — 11 875 (36.35% of the total number of votes); 2) entertainment — 8 606 (26.34%); goods of long-term use — 2 482 (7.6%)<sup>19</sup>. Thus, people who took part in the vote, usually save on vacations (travels, entertainments) first.

### **Conclusion**

The Russian Federation has all the possibilities to become a leader in consistent use of existing capacities of national parks, federal nature reserves and other protected areas in the Arctic, successfully implementing a new agenda for UN 2030. In the report GSDR (Global Sustainable Development Report) sustainable development goals (SDGs) considered as interconnected system, as progress towards one purpose may depend and facilitate progress towards the other<sup>20</sup>. For the preservation and development of tourist-and-recreational of the natural potential of the Arctic from 17 UN claimed two goals are particularly relevant. Goal (the purpose of) 14 and, (b): Savings, conservation and sustainable use of oceans and marine resources for development. Goal (objective) 15 (a), (b), (c) the protection and recovery of terrestrial ecosystems, promoting their sustainable use, sustainable forest management, stop and reverse the land degradation and the loss of biodiversity<sup>21</sup>.

There is no doubt that such an approach should become mandatory at the Organization of the Arctic and Northern types of tourism, involvement of new tourism products in tourist activities, while preserving the natural and cultural environment of the Arctic and the North. The balance of economy and ecology in Arctic tourism sphere is no less important than in other industries (hydrocarbon production, transport, construction, energy).

---

<sup>19</sup> URL: <http://www.kommersant.ru/poll/results> (Accessed: 06 April 2016).

<sup>20</sup> Global Sustainable Development Report, 2015 edition. Advance Unedited version. URL: <https://sustainabledevelopment.un.org/content/documents/1758GSDR%202015%20Advance%20Unedited%20Version.pdf> (Accessed: 10 February 2016).

<sup>21</sup> Global Sustainable Development Report, 2015 edition. Advance Unedited version. p. 41



Figure 7. UN: 17 goals of sustainable development // Global Sustainable Development Report, 2015 edition

The overall conclusion is that effective practical activities, quality service in the field of tourism in the Russian Arctic — still the case for the near future in the time interval from 10 to 15 years, and maybe more. A lot depends here on the existence of demand for local products in the Arctic, the prevailing conditions in the market of tourism services, the volume of investment in infrastructure development in the Arctic regions of the Russian Federation, the positions of the Russian State, regional and municipal authorities and management of domestic business, from effective operation of tourism operators and agencies themselves.

### References

1. *Novaya Zemlya: monografiya* / pod obshhej redakciej P.V. Boyarskogo. M.: Evropejskie izdaniya — Paulsen, 2009. 410 p.
2. Medvedev D.A. *Mezhdunarodnoe ekonomicheskoe sotrudnichestvo v Arktike. Arkticheskii ekonomicheskii sovet*/Pod red. V.P. Zhuravelya. M.: ANO CSOIP, 2015. 92 p. URL: <http://neva.transtec-neva.ru/files/File/2015/documents/news/book-medvedev-arctic-2015.pdf> (Accessed: 09 February 2016).
3. Vorobeva A.S. Arkticheskij turizm v Rossii: problemy i perspektivy. *Nauka i obrazovanie v zhizni sovremennogo obshchestva: sb. nauch. trudov po materialam Mezhdunarodnoj nauchno-prakt. konf. 30 aprelya 2015 g.: v 14 tomakh. Tom 5.* Tambov: OOO «Konsaltingovaya kompaniya Yukom», 2015. pp.35—36. URL: <http://ucom.ru/doc/conf/2015.04.30.05.pdf> (Accessed: 26 February 2016).
4. Fedotovskih A.V. Strategiya razvitiya Arkticheskogo turizma do 2030 goda (19.03.2015). URL: <http://innovation-russia.ru/initiatives/28> (Accessed: 19 March 2016).
5. *Nacionalnyj Turisticheskij Rejting* (№1). Dekabr 07, 2015. Centr informacionnykh kommunikacij. Zhurnal «Otdyh v Rossii». URL: <http://russia-rating.ru/info/9857.html> (Accessed: 08 December 2015).
6. Ershov R.V. Nacionalnyj park «Russkaya Arktika». *Arkticheskie vedomosti*. 2015. № 3 (14). pp. 116—123.
7. *Geoekonomicheskie processy v Arktike i razvitie morskikh kommunikacij*/nauch. red. d.e.n., prof. S.Yu. Kozmenko, d.e.n., prof. V.S. Selin. Apatity: KNC RAN, 2014. 266 p.

UDC 338.48/379.857

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.124

## Theory and methodology of the Arctic tourism development



© **Nadezhda K. Kharlampieva**, Candidate of Historical Sciences, Associate Professor of World Politics Study Department, Saint-Petersburg State University, Executive editor of Journal “Arctic Art&Culture”, International Arctic Center of Art and Culture. E-mail: n.kharlampieva@spbu.ru

**Abstract.** In order to study the ideas of development of the Arctic tourism the author offers: five levels of applied scientific research on studying the prospects of the Russian Arctic tourism, creation of regional innovative system of water resources in the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation, and also tourist recreational

system in the Arctic as a model of the safe tourism in the Arctic.

**Keywords:** *Arctic, regions, tourism, innovation system, tourist recreational complex, model of the safe tourism, methodology of research, the water and ecological principle*

The development of tourism in the Arctic is a new theme in the public strategic planning, research, commercial activities in the Russian Federation. Embodiment of this idea in life gives hope for socio-economic development of the regions. However, tourism activities, as well as any economic sector depends on many political and economic factors. Accordingly, considering the large investment projects of tourism development as a long-term perspective plans, we stop only on the research methodology of the development of tourism in the Arctic. The development of a research methodology allows showing the depth of the target object and the subject. The object of the research is ideological and conceptual development of tourism in the Arctic. The subject of research is making safe tourism in the Arctic. The Russian Federation, as the winner of the big Arctic space, intended to become a platform for diverse nature tourism development. Because all available theories and practices for the study and exploration of the Arctic as a whole will help finding the best solutions to socio-economic development of the Arctic Zone of the Russian Federation (hereinafter — the AZRF) and thus contribute to the safe tourism in the Arctic.

In *methodology* development studies of the Arctic tourism we apply water-basin and water-land approaches, as well as water-land ecological principle within the integral representations of a single territorial natural complex Aqua Arctic. The choice of the aforementioned research approaches driven by environmental requirements of economic activities in the Arctic. Hydrographic studies remain the most sustainable collaborative research with people's economic planning in the far North and the Arctic. Considering the evolution of scientific methods based on aqua-territorial

approach and outgoing environmental principles, we use them as the main components of the transformation of modern decision-making process in the Arctic.

Water-basin approach, developed within the walls of the AARI, is based on the provisions of F.N. Milkov [1, p. 9—16] and developed by G.D. Richter [2, p. 5—17] natural (landscape) complex as the largest concentration of the ocean of three levels: air, water, mineral, or, if there is ice, four: air, ice, water, mineral. The principle of land-water device as the basis for development of the territory in the far North was applied during the preparation of the collectivization in Soviet Russia. "The situation" on the land-water device of the labour population of the Northern margins of the RSFSR consisted of "creating land and organizational conditions for the deployment of the cooperation of the local population and collectivization [3, p. 404—405]. The evolution of the water-basin and water-land of the principles we are seeing in diagrams and tables V.V. Ivanov" catchment Boundary basin of the Arctic Ocean, its parts, sub-basins, seas, bays, Straits [4, p. 139]. According to one of the author of the Arctic Ocean is divided into four parts: Arctic pool, North-European pool, sea of the Siberian shelf, as well as the sea, bays and Straits of the Canadian Arctic archipelago. The Arctic pool is divided into Eurasian and Amerazijskij subbascejny. North-European pool includes Greenland Sea, Norwegian, Barents and white. The Siberian shelf seas are sea Kara, Laptev, East Siberian and Chukchi and the seas, bays and Straits of the Canadian Archipelago— Beaufort Sea, Baffin and Lincoln, Canadian Straits pool Fox, Hudson Bay and Hudson Strait [4, p. 140].

Why you should access these research approaches? Water-basin approach shows the international oceanic and sea level of organization of the expedition and cruise tourism in the Arctic. The magnitude and the interest of the world community to the Arctic also involves the development of different ways of creating air and morskikh routes. Water-central approach is designed to show the possibilities of the development of maritime and coastal tourism in the Arctic and in AZRF. In addition to maritime, air species move tourists; ground transport accessibility view may become a key area for research of test sites and overcoming the difficulties of river ice. Catchment approach in the Arctic Ocean (AO) shows the border sea, River Arctic tourism development zone in northern seas and estuarine areas of rivers, coastal parts of them (fig. 1). Combined principle of movement of tourist flow from land to sea and Arctic Ocean route through River ways, is the optimal solution when you create routes in all seasons.

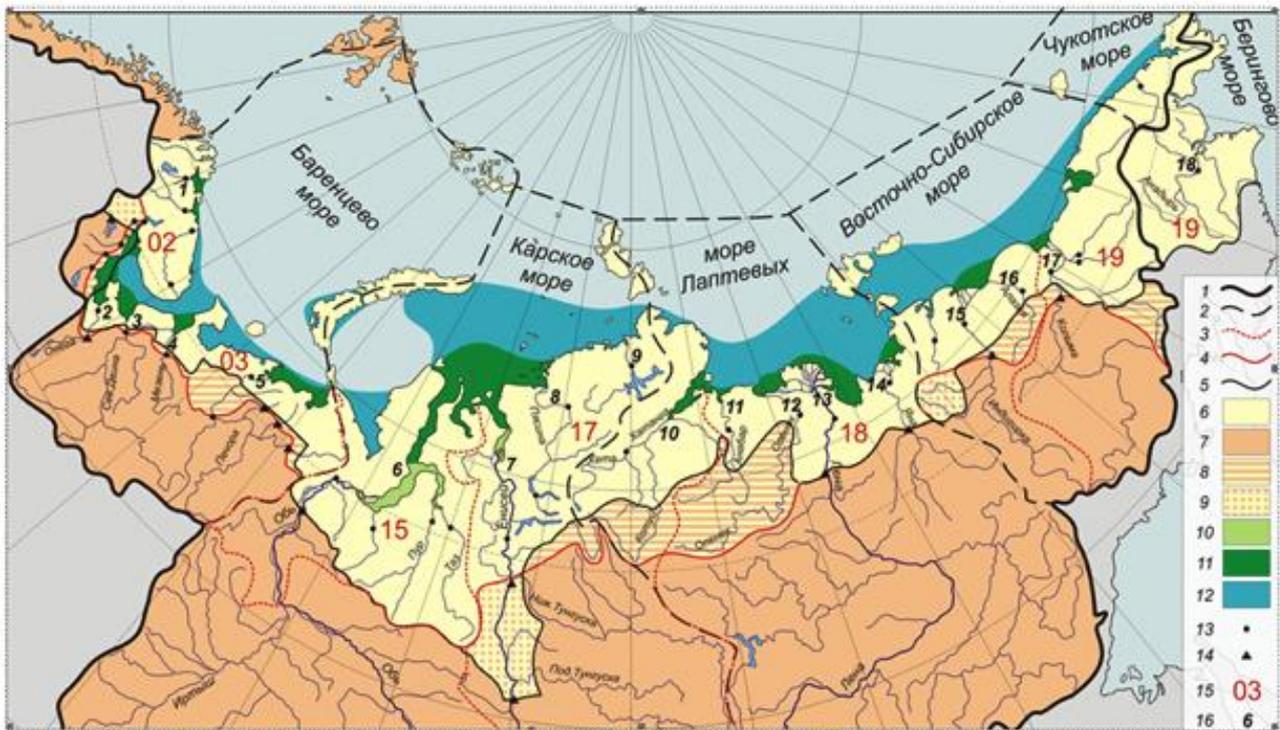


Figure 1. AZRF and its current administrative borders including water borders and mouth areas of the Siberian rivers (Ivanov V.V., Tretjakov M.V., 2015).

**Legend:** boundary 1 — the catchment basin of the Arctic Ocean, 2 — watershed basins, seas, 3 — catchment basins, seas, 4 — AZRF, 5 — waters of the AZRF. **Watersheds:** 6 — Russian Arctic rivers in its administrative and territorial borders, 7 — Russian Arctic rivers outside its territorial boundaries, 8 — Russian Arctic rivers within its boundaries 9 — Russian Arctic rivers outside its vodnoresursnoj borders. **Zone:** 10 — fresh water during the year, 11 — fresh water at maximum runoff a Russian and salinity with minimum runoff, 12 — distribution of river waters in the seas. **Gauging casements:** 13 — trailing hydrometric casements rivers 14 — border gauging casements rivers on the border of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation. **15 — rooms of basin districts by the water code:** 02 — Barents-Belomorsky, 03 — Dvinsko-Pechorsky, 15 — Nizhneobsky, 17 — Yenisei, 18 — Lena, 19 — Anadyro-Kolyma. **16 — estuarine areas rooms rivers AZRF:** 1 — Tulomskaya, 2 — Kolsko-Onegskaya, 3 — Northern Dvina, 4 — Mezen and Kuloi, 5-6 — Pechora-Tazovski, 7 — Yeniseysk, 8 — Pasinskaya, 9 — Nizhne Taimyrskaya, 10 — Hatangskaya, 11 — Anabarskaya, 12 — Olenekskaya, 13 — Lenskaya, 14 — Yanskaya, 15 — Indigirskaya, 16 — Alazejskaya, 17 — Kolymskaya, 18 -Anadirskaya.

I have put forward a hypothesis based on the fact that the definition of the five levels of applied scientific research on the prospects of development of the Russian Arctic tourism shows the following practical possibilities: a) the establishment of regional innovation system of water resources in the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation, b) tourist-recreational systems as model creation safe tourism in the Arctic.

Drainage scheme of the Arctic Ocean must be taken as the main criterion for water-land ecological environmental requirements for conducting economic activity in the Arctic, including such industries as Arctic tourism. The AZRF in modern administrative boundaries, together with an indication of the specified border of water and land areas of the Siberian rivers [5, p. 151—160] is so far the only Arctic hydrometeorological card, designed to show: (a) water-use perspective) the ecological principle in evaluating investment projects of an economic nature; b) changing system of modern decision-making, coordination and regulation in the field of ensuring living safely. The main theoretical-methodological provisions of researched topics also include the idea of develop-

ment of tourism in the framework of the research the matrix on the fundamentals of tourism development in the Arctic, based on water-basin and water-land approaches. Identification of environmental requirements can be build on the basis of the principle of integral aqua-territorial Arctic natural complex. Scientific research and considerable matrix learning the basics of tourism development in the Arctic will identify: (a) forming border) tourist-recreational system in the Arctic,) the place and role of the development of the Russian Arctic tourism.

Table 1

*Research matrix  
for the basics of tourism development in the Arctic (compl. N. Kharlampeva)*

Levels of applied analysis	Bodies responsible for Arctic tourism destinations
1 International (Oceanic and nautical tourism)	The International Maritime Organization (IMO). Marine Operators Association cruise tours and individual companies
2 International Arctic (Sea tourism)	The Working Group of the Arctic Council for the protection of the Arctic Marine (PAME). Marine Operators Association cruise tours and individual companies
3 Interregional Arctic tourism (maritime tourism)	The Nordic Council of Ministers; The Council of Baltic Sea States; The Barents Euro-Arctic Council. Bering programmes and projects.
4 Regional innovation system AZRF (marine and riverine tourism)	Northwestern Federal District Urals federal district Siberian Federal District, far eastern Federal District. Arctic Chamber of Commerce. The Northern Forum.
5 Inside the actors AZRF (marine and riverine tourism)	Management and committees on culture and tourism, education

***How to coordinate and regulate environmental requirements  
for tourist-and-recreational Arctic system***

When designing the formation of the Arctic tourist-recreational system based on the principle of Aqua-territorial single natural complex of the Arctic, as well as to identify the boundaries of economic regional innovation system in the AZRF, it would be desirable to take into account the organizational and administrative system of water-land farming in the AZRF. This approach will help solve the main task: compliance with environmental requirements in all sectors of economic activity.

Table 2

*Environmental principles in the formation of tourist-and-recreational systems  
Arctic, Arctic zone of the Russian Federation*

International (Oceanic and nautical tourism)	International Arctic (maritime tourism)	Interregional Arctic tourism (maritime tourism)	Regional innovation system AZRF (MOR and recz. camping, hiking)	Inside the actors AZRF (sea and River tourism, hiking)
Community with common environmental fate	Environmental safe tourism (2014)	Model sustainable regional tourism» (2006)	?	?

***Water — land ecological principle and environmental requirements  
for the AZRF regional innovation system***

Accounting watershed borders the Arctic Ocean as a basis for the elaboration of methods of water quality assessment criterion may become water-ecological environmental requirements when conducting economic activities in the Arctic, including such industries as Arctic tourism. Discussion on establishment of tourism and recreation system in the Arctic, in the AZRF, from a scientific point of view, will be the most compelling in the context of a comprehensive study, study and exchange of views, the two interdependent research directions: building the foundations of a safe tourism and environmental water-environmental activities. Accordingly, it is proposed:

1. Water resource integrated approach study was adopted as a basis for effective cooperation between the four sectors: States, NGOs, businesses and independent actors (volunteering, private donation) in the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation.
2. to develop the concept of regional innovation system (RIS) on water in the AZRF with a view to consolidating efforts to identify and the formation of the system of legal norms regulating social relations, conservation and restoration of water objects and create a model of the AZRF safe tourism during the formation of tourist-and-recreational of the Arctic System.
3. Water resource approach in natural zones of territorial and natural resources in the Arctic contributes not only to the development of economic activities in the Arctic, but will be the basis for development of Arctic tourism. It can be assumed that this approach will address one of the priorities of the International Arctic regional cooperation to develop the foundations of environmental requirements studies on the ground between local self-government bodies of the AZRF, Regional Council of the Barents Euro-Arctic region, the Northern Forum and projects of indigenous peoples of the Arctic, research and other associations, as well as all types of businesses.

### ***References***

1. Milkov F.N. *O podrazdelenii landshaftnoj sfery Zemli na otdeley i klassy landshaftov*. Izd-vo Zemlevedenie, 1967. Vyp. 7.
2. Rikhter G.D. *Osnovy tipologicheskoy klassifikacii landshaftov i rajonirovaniya*. Trudy AANII, 1971. T. 304.
3. Belov M.I. *Istoriya otkrytiya i osvoeniya Severnogo morskogo puti*. *Nauchnoe i hozyajstvennoe osvoenie Sovetskogo Severa 1933— 1945 gg.* t. 4. L., 1969. Sm. takzhe: CU, 1930, №40. p. 547.
4. Ivanov V.V. *Presnovodnyj balans Severnogo Ledovitogo okeana*. *Trudy Arkticheskogo i Antarkticheskogo NII*. 1976. T.323.
5. Ivanov V.V., Tretyakov M.V. *Problemy vosstanovleniya i razvitiya sistemy gidrometeoro-logicheskikh nablyudenij v ustevykh oblastyah rek Arkticheskoy zony kak osnovy gosudar-stvennogo monitoringa etih poverhnostnyh vodnyh obektov*. *Obshchestvo. Sreda. Razvitie*. 2015. № 4. pp. 151—160.

## PROTECTING CULTURAL AND NATURAL ENVIRONMENT OF THE ARCTIC

UDC 338.48

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.130

### Fedor Konyukhov's dream



F. Konyukhov, A. Oboimov, V. Simonov

E-mail: kitttens@yandex.ru

© **Alexander P. Oboimov**, member of the Russian Geographical Society, employee of the Northern GMS; participated in the Arctic expedition in August-September 2014 on the yacht "Apostol Andrey"; in 2015 took part in an international documentary "Oceans and weather" on marine hydro-meteorological camp Khodovarikha as a consultant from Northern Hydrometeorological Service; regular author of the journal "Arctic and North".

**Abstract.** The article is about the meeting with the famous traveler F.F. Konyukhov, whose ancestors were Russian Pomors, in the White Sea coast, in the place called Letnyaya Zolotitsa. Photos of the meeting are published.

**Keywords:** *Fedor Konyukhov, Viktor Simonov, Letnyaya Zolotitsa, meeting, cross*

I had a chance to meet many unusual, unique characters and unexpected fates in my life. They were different people. Imperceptible and little-known, who made me understand that their unknownness is completely undeserved misunderstanding and I wanted fix this injustice and write about them. When I have the opportunity to meet with an extraordinary and interesting person, I usually don't miss a chance. I learned that Fyodor Konyukhov and Victor Simonov dog sledding team is going from Petrozavodsk to overcome 800 km and visit our area and then found a way to meet them. Director of the National Park "Onezhskoe Pomorye" Onega **Oleg Prodan**<sup>1</sup> invited me to visit his base — summer ecohotel "Letnyaya Zolotica". The airplane took me to there and a cavalcade of snowmobiles met me. In a few minutes, I was at the base.

It should be noted that the ecohotel— a unique place, good location, near the sea, the rivers Kolisma and Paraninsk creek — the "golden triangle." It is a real museum of geographical zones, established due to its solitary geographical location and its mild climate. Crystal clean air and the silence of untouched nature and pure spring water flows and even snow here have really inexpressible whiteness. Price per plane ticket is high — it is cheaper to fly to Moscow than to Letnyaya Zolotica.

<sup>1</sup> Oleg Leonidovich Prodan died 19.04.2016 near the Belyi Island (Yamal). The helicopter "Robinson" crashed. It was a part of the expedition "Following the steps of two captains" aimed at searching the remains of the G. Sedov's expedition 1914 on board of "St. Anna".

Dog sledding expedition arrived at Letnyaya Zolotica faster and Fyodor Konyukhov met us. First, we went to a local school for a meeting with children. Along the route of the expedition, Fyodor Konyukhov and Victor Simonov had meetings with residents of villages. Members of the expedition talked to many people, but the greatest interest in the stories of travelers had schoolchildren. Oleg Prodan started the official part of the meeting. He spoke about the route and the expedition, their path through two national parks "The Vodlozero" in Karelia and "Onegskoe Pomorye" in Arkhangelsk Region. The expedition is dedicated to the 100 anniversary of the first Russian nature reserve "Barguzinskiy", located on the territory of the Republic of Buryatia.

Then Victor Simonov told about his pets — 16 dogs — members of the expedition.

— My friendship with dogs has started in childhood, but the Huskies have become my friends recently. In 2003 our Club of travelers got an application from the German traveler with a proposal to have an expedition to the North of Yakutia on the two dog sleds. This expedition was very interesting and taught me a lot, it was the time I realized that I wanted to have my own dogs. Now, I have more than 60 dogs of various breeds. The majority are the Chukchi sled dogs who have excellent physical qualities for long work in cold climate. They are unpretentious, extremely functional and have excellent senses, which allow finding the way in the most difficult conditions. Dogs are friendly. They never bite people.

The children listened about our smaller brothers with surprise and started to ask questions:

- How many kilograms of cargo can a team of dogs take?
- What is the speed of running dogs?
- And how much do they eat? How often do they need to be fed?
- Do they get tired?

The most experienced musher of Russia — Victor Simonov gladly answered all the questions and told about a unique Chukotka sledge dog, called Cherk. He is the only dog in the world, who has been through the whole Arctic. He is 12 years old, but he is a real leader. The only place he has not been to is Alaska.

Then it was Fyodor Konyukhov's turn to speak. He told about his life, his ancestors - pomors, natives of these places and his first journey. Told about storms in the ocean, meeting the whales. He is the first Russian who managed to complete the "Grand Helmet" program (North Pole, South Pole, Everest) and he is the first traveler in the world, who 5 times reached the poles of our planet: the Northern geographical pole (three times), South geographic pole of inaccessibility, the Arctic Ocean, Everest and Cape Horn.

— I visited 125 countries, has seen a lot, but there is nothing more beautiful than homeland. I could not live abroad, — said F. Konyukhov.

Children have shown drawings they specially painted for the arrival of the famous traveler. The theme of the drawings was F. Konyukhov travelling: rowing boat, dog sledding, skiing ... and he signed every picture. At the end, there was an overall photo. Victor Simonov and Fyodor Konyukhov invited schoolchildren to ride the dogs the next day. In the evening, after dinner, everyone gathered in an informal setting at the ecohotel, watched prepared a slideshow of the expedition. In a personal conversation, I was interested and pleased to know those personality traits of famous people, which are usually no visible from the pages of the official press or TV screens.

— Fyodor Filippovich, well, hot air balloon, once again to the North Pole, bathyscaphe — all these is understandable. But, what is the most treasured dream? — I asked.

— Sasha, I want to build a ship like "Fram", and drift for two or three years.

— Will you take me with you?

— Only for summer and in winter I want to paint in solitude, — said the traveller and laughed.

— No, I won't leave you alone. Somebody should still carry out scientific observations. There should be the benefit of a drift.

— Well, I agree, for the sake of science, you can stay, — said Fedor.

He told us about his and his wife dreams: "in Japan, there lives an old lady who is 90 years old and she has planted a million of cedars. There is a a movement. We also want to plant three hundred appletrees and grow a garden".

In the morning, after breakfast, I was dressed warmly, sat on snowmobiles and went to the Konuhova Guba. In half an hour we reached the abandoned village of Konuhovka — where the ancestors of the famous traveler lived. Near the wood chapel "on four pillars" Fedor read the prayer and than visited the last house of the willage where he was photographed near the window. After some time, when all snowmobiles reached Konuhovka, we went further to the Konuhovd Guba. Path took quite a lot of time.

Here Oleg Prodan and his assistants assembled the Memorial Cross, which had been made by the Karelian hadicrafts msters. A few more minutes, and the Cross was installed. At the base of the Cross, they put the stone from the Kiy Island, specially brought by the expedition. Prayers, photo for the memory and the way back.

As Victor Simonov promised, after dinner were arranged "ridding" on the dogs. Everyone could make a circle along the coast of the White Sea. Children's delight was boundless. We and a

group from the “Arkhangelk television” said goodbye to travelers and went to the airport. The plane "Anushka" took off and after a short flight we got back home, but these unforgettable hours we'd spent together with Fedor Konuhov and Victor Simonov would warm our hearts for a long time.



Figure 1. In the village Konuhovka near the White Sea / photo by A.P. Oboimov



Figure 2. In the forest, at the shores of the Konuhov Guba / photo by A.P. Oboimov



Figure 3. Pray at the wood chapel "on four pillars" / photo by A.P. Oboimov



Figure 4. It is possible to get here only by plane / photo by A.P. Oboimov



Figure 5. Ecohotel "Letnyaya Zolotica" / photo by A.P. Oboimov



Figure 6. Promise is fulfilled / photo by A.P. Oboimov



Figure 7. Installation of the Memorial Cross / photo by A.P. Oboimov



Figure 8. F. Konyukhov, A. Oboimov, V. Simonov



Figure 9. Wharf was left from the village/ photo by A.P. Oboimov



Figure10. Anna Katorina and Fedor Konuyhov on their ancestors' land / photo by A.P. Oboimov



Figure 11. Children from the Russian Pomorie / photo by A.P. Oboimov



Figure 12. Meeting at school in the Letnyaya Zolotica / photo by A.P. Oboimov  
Top row: V. Simonov, F. Konyukhov, O. Prodan



Figure 13. F. Konyukhov and O. Prodan talk with kids / photo by A. P. Oboimov





Figure 14, 15. Kid's paintings with the autograph of F. Konuykhov / photo by A. P. Oboimov



Figure 16. Faithful friends are waiting for the command / photo by A. P. Oboimov



Figure 17. Children are happy / photo by A. P. Oboimov



Figure 18. O. Prodan. Autographs for memory / photo by A. P. Oboimov

## REVIEWS

UDC 327.7

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.144

**Scientific and educational space of the Arctic: Norway<sup>1</sup>**

© **Konstantin S. Zaikov**, Candidate of Historical Science, Director of the Arctic Centre for Strategic Studies of the Northern (Arctic) Federal University named after M.V. Lomonosov. E-mail: k.zaikov@narfu.ru



© **Marina R. Kalinina**, Candidate of Philosophic Sciences, adviser to the Rector of Northern (Arctic) Federal University named after M.V. Lomonosov, Vice-president for international cooperation of the University of the Arctic. E-mail: m.r.kalinina@narfu.ru



© **Aleksander M. Tamitskiy**, Candidate of Political Sciences, Senior Lecturer, Department of Regional Studies, International Relations and Political Science, Northern (Arctic) Federal University named after M.V. Lomonosov. E-mail: a.tamitskij@narfu.ru



© **Aleksander A. Saburov**, postgraduate student, Department of World History; Head of International Projects Unit, Department of International Cooperation, Northern (Arctic) Federal University named after M.V. Lomonosov. E-mail: alexandersaburov@gmail.com



© **Evgeny A. Shepelev**, editor of journal "Arctic and North", Northern (Arctic) Federal University named after M.V. Lomonosov. E-mail: e.shepelev@narfu.ru

**Abstract.** The analytical overview represents the scientific and educational potential of the Norwegian territories of the Circumpolar Region (Svalbard, Finnmark, Troms and Nordland), Norway's science and innovation policy and scientific interests in the Arctic.

**Keywords:** *Norway, Spitsbergen, Svalbard, Finnmark, Troms, Nordland, Arctic, science, innovations, university, scientific and educational policy*

Scientific research in the Arctic is important for combating climate change, environmental security, preservation of biodiversity, as well as to carry out the tasks important for the Russian Federation: to secure the limits of the continental shelf; development of the Northern sea route, the solution of socio-economic development problems in the Arctic, cooperation with international organizations and associations, the Arctic Council and the Council of the Barents Euro-Arctic re-

<sup>1</sup> The article was written within the framework of the order placed by the Ministry of Education and Science of the Russian Federation No. 3274 "Research and information and analytical support for the processes and activities within the framework of multilateral and bilateral cooperation in the sphere of science, education, innovation, and the youth policy of the Russian Federation with the countries in the Northern and Arctic zone".

gion. In this connection, it is necessary to study the foreign experience of scientific and education development of the Arctic. Scientific and educational strategies for Arctic states, their potential in science and education still have not become the subject of a particular study<sup>2</sup>. Although the scientific and educational policy of Norway has been discussed in a number of articles [1]. Consequently, the authors of this article aim to analyse and present a comprehensive overview of the state of scientific and innovation policy of Norway in the North.

### ***Innovation policy in the sphere of science, education and the economy***

A modern national system Norway's economy began to take a shape in 1960s — 1970s. At the initial stage, it included public funding of scientific research, tax policy, the creation of flexible structures for the management of high-tech industries. Today, Norway takes measures for not only the development of technological innovations, but also social and organizational development and marketing. The priority is the support of scientific and technological innovation. Norway got its institutionalized and incorporated system based on the following components: state structure and organization — responsibility centers to implement innovation policy; subsidies and tax regulations of research, development and innovation; the branched network of research centers, centers of innovation expertise, advanced technological expertise, technology parks.

The work on the formation of the state innovation policy and research of Norway is exercised by *the Ministry of Commerce, industry and fisheries and the Ministry of education and science* under the direction of two organizations: Organization of Innovation in Norway (Innovasjon Norge) and State Industrial Development Corporation of Norway "SIVA." Both institutions promote innovation activities in the country. The Ministry of education and science of Norway operates the Research Council of Norway (see fig. 1). *Norwegian Research Council* implements the science and technology policy, including public subsidies for research and development programmes, development of innovation in the economy, promotes research activity and its results at international level. "*Innovation Norway*" provides support for export-oriented innovation entrepreneurship, aimed at promoting the Norwegian innovation on the international market. *Corporation "SIVA"* promotes the organization of high value added production through the provision of facilities for the business, grant support to the establishment of business incubators and technology parks. In addition in Norway innovation policy is done by the *Foundation for scientific and industrial research*, SINTEF (Stiftelsen for industriell og teknisk forskning), founded in 1950 in Trondheim. The purpose of the Fund is support and investing in the development of innovations in areas such as

---

<sup>2</sup> Saburov A.A. Norvezhskie issledovaniya v Arktike. URL: [http://russiancouncil.ru/inner/?id\\_4=2608#top](http://russiancouncil.ru/inner/?id_4=2608#top) (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

renewable energy, climate and environmental technologies, oil and gas, marine technology, health and well-being, new materials.

Norway had adopted a number of documents relating to the financial support of the national innovation system. In 2012, the Norwegian Research Council adopted an updated version of "*the strategy for the development of national research infrastructure*" (Norway's national research infrastructure strategy for 2012—2017). In March 2013, the Norwegian Government presented a white paper on long-term prospects of national scientific and technological policy of "*long-term prospects — knowledge, giving opportunities*" (Lange linjer - kunnskap gir muligheter) and *Priority areas for innovation and development in Norway*. According to the listed documents, the following areas are recognized: oil and gas industry; information and communication technologies; bio-and nanotechnologies; shipbuilding and ship machinery; Ecology; renewable energy and resource efficiency; medical technologies. Tools for financial support of an innovative economy, development programme — FORNY2020, VRI, SkatteFUNN and programmes of the Norwegian Research Council. *FORNY2020 Program* aims to commercialize the results of development held in publicly funded research institutions, and the promotion of innovative products and services to market. It provides funding for newly established companies and generates the growth of existing ones, provides interoperability between developers and users of new technologies.

*Program VRI (2007—2017)* focuses on support for innovation, knowledge development and value-added through regional cooperation and the strengthening of research and development. Purpose of realization the VRI is the development of cooperation between the system of higher professional education, innovative institutes and enterprises. *SkatteFUNN Program* focused on commercial enterprises engaged in research and development, to support innovation in the field of trade, industry and services. The program implements an indirect mechanism for financial support through the tax deduction of up to 20% of the costs associated with research activities. Costs must be documented and recorded in the accounts on projects. In addition to these targeted programs, Innovation Norway has turned to support companies through individual research and development contracts between producers and users as parties in the business (IRD) or business and Government (OFU) in order to support the creation of new products, production processes and services.



Figure 1. The national system of innovation in Norway

In Norway the network of *“research innovation centres”* (Sentre for forskningsdrevet innovasjon, CFI) has been designed to encourage companies in innovation through long-term studies that promote active cooperation between innovation companies and well-known research groups, the development of localized industry-oriented research clusters, which are at the forefront of international research community and are an integral part of a dynamic international networks, professional training in areas of importance for the business sector. Currently, there operates 21 Center in Norway; among them is the Center for innovation in aquaculture technology (CREATE), Center for integrated operations in the petroleum industry (IO Center), laboratory of medical imaging (MI Lab), laboratory of telemedicine Tromsø (TTL), Cardiology Center of innovation (CCI). The Norwegian Research Council, Innovation Norway and the Corporation SIVA. In 2006 Norway organized the *Norwegian centres of expertise* (NCE) to intensify innovation activity industrial clusters. In 2015, Norway

registered 14 centres with funding of 150 million NOK: NCE Aquaculture aims, NCE NCE Instrumentation Tourism-Fjord Norway, NCE Seafood Innovation Cluster, NCE NCE Maritime Media, CleanTech, NCE, NCE Culinology Eyde, Micro-and Nanotechnology NCE, NCE Systems Engineering Kongsberg, NCE Oslo Cancer Cluster, NCE Health Technology, NCE Raufoss, NCE Smart Energy Markets.

The Norwegian Research Council implemented activities to create *centres of excellence* (Sentre for fremragende forskning, SFF) with leading universities and research institutes. The primary objective of the centres is achieving concrete results at the global level, carrying out long-term research and training of scientific staff. They have 21 centers like that.

The University of Oslo established the Centre for the Study of Mind in Nature (CSMN), Centre for Immune Regulation (CIR), Centre for Ecological and Evolutionary Synthesis (CEES), Centre for the Study of Equality, Social Organization, and Performance (ESOP), Norwegian Centre for Mental Disorders Research (NORMENT). The University of Tromsø together with the University of Oslo founded the Centre of Theoretical and Computational Chemistry (CTCC).

Its activities are concentrated in 13 industrial parks that develop links between research bodies and industrial companies and organizations that support a close relationship with universities, institutions and independent research centres. Leading technology park of Norway is Oslo *Science Park* (OsloTech) founded in 1986. Shareholders are the University of Oslo, SIVA and a number of key industry players, such as the Norwegian Hydro, Pareto, Dyno, and others.

In the North of the country, since September 2015 Tromsø and Alta research communities organized the *Norwegian Research Institute Norut (Northern Research Institute)* that is a national research and innovation center of research, development and commercialization in biotechnology, information and communication technologies, Earth observation and social sciences, including for the needs of economic and social development of the Arctic region. In addition, Norway develops a network of business-incubators that allow you to create conditions for the development of innovative enterprises at the stage of the beginning of their work.

***In the economic sphere*** Norway distinguishes from other countries of the Arctic region, its studies are focused on the exploitation of primary resources, which form narrow directions of development of the high-tech sector of the national economy. Thanks to the system of tax deductions when implementing research projects, the program of “Oil and Gas in the 21<sup>st</sup> Century”; and thanks to quite high taxation of energy extraction that stimulates companies in developing and applying the latest technologies which reduce the costs of mining operations. It is allowed to develop research in the field of technology of deepwater offshore drilling and production of oil and gas, stock monitoring systems. Advances in these areas began to develop other accompanying di-

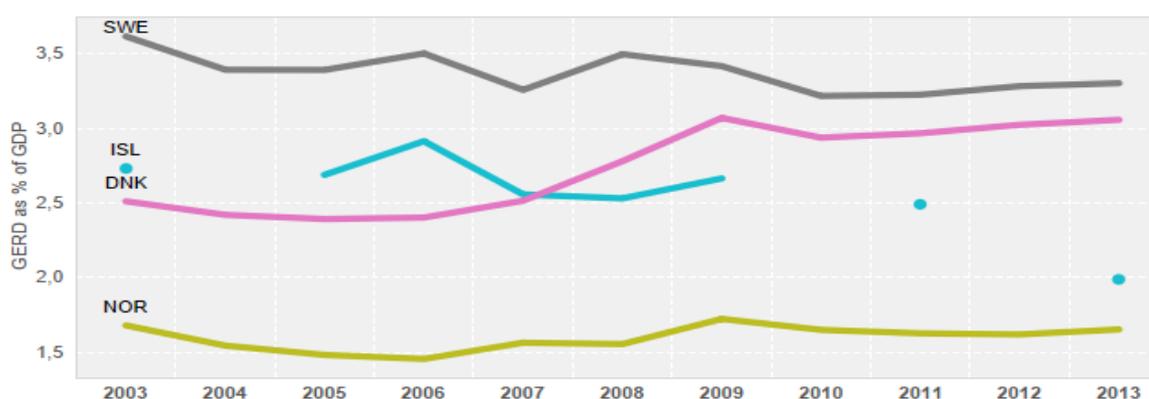
rections of scientific knowledge — information and communication technologies, shipbuilding, ecology, renewable energy. Despite this, innovation activity in Norway is recognized as one of the lowest among European countries. Analysis of statistical data shows that Norway's spendings on research and development in 2011—2013 are only 1.63% of the GDP of the country, that is 2 times less than in Sweden and 1.8 times lower in Denmark (table 1).

Table 1

Research and development expenditure in total GDP in 2003-2013, %<sup>3</sup>

Year country	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013
Denmark	2,51	2,42	2,39	2,4	2,51	2,78	3,07	2,94	2,97	3,02	3,06
Iceland	2,73	-	2,69	2,91	2,56	2,53	2,66	-	2,49	-	-
Norway	1,68	1,55	1,48	1,46	1,56	1,56	1,72	1,65	1,63	1,62	1,65
Sweden	3,61	3,39	3,39	3,5	3,26	3,5	3,42	3,22	3,22	3,28	3,3

The index for Norway has been characterized by a slight change in the trend toward reduction or increase; Sweden and Denmark show a small but steady growth (fig.2)

Figure 2. Expenditures on research and development in Norway in the volume of GDP in 2003 -2013, %<sup>4</sup>

At the same time, Norway annually increases volumes of r and d funding in cash. In 2013, it was 50.98 million spent. Norwegian. EEK, that 6% more than the previous period, but generally lower than Sweden and Denmark (table 2).

Table 2

Research and development expenditure in Norway in 2003-2013, in billions. Nok<sup>5</sup>

Country	Year										
	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013
Denmark	36,07	36,43	37,96	40,42	43,74	49,96	52,61	52,83	54,38	56,43	57,65

<sup>3</sup> The Nordic Institute for Studies in Innovation, Research and Education (NIFU). URL: <http://www.foustatistikkbanken.no/nifu/?language=en> (Accessed: 01 September 2015)

<sup>4</sup> OECD.Stat. URL: [http://stats.oecd.org/Index.aspx?DataSetCode=MSTI\\_PUB#](http://stats.oecd.org/Index.aspx?DataSetCode=MSTI_PUB#) (Accessed: 01 September 2015)

<sup>5</sup> NIFU/Statistics Norway. URL: <http://www.foustatistikkbanken.no/nifu/?language=en> (Accessed: 15 October 2015)

Iceland	23,72	-	28,44	34,96	35,13	39,17	42,24	-	42,42	-	-
Norway	27,21	27,53	29,50	32,25	36,77	40,53	41,89	42,76	45,44	48,04	50,98
Sweden	96,77	95,13	98,57	108,48	107,37	118,40	112,33	113,21	117,89	120,91	124,63

In 2013, 31.2% of all enterprises in the countr carried out technological innovations (2011 — 33.7%); proportion of expenses for technological innovation in the total volume of shipped goods, works and services performed amounted to 0.90%; in Denmark this rate is 3.45%, Sweden — 2.98%. Proportion of innovative goods, works and services in the total volume of goods shipped, works performed, services made up in 2011 — 4.6% and in 2013 — 6.1%. In Sweden, these indicators made 9.2% and 8.4% respectively [2]. In Norway, 46% of the cost of research and development, public expenditures accounted for 43% in the business sector; the rest is higher education, NGOs and foreign sources.

Table 3

*Funding of SRD in Norway 2009—2013, mln NOK*

<i>Sources of funding for Research and Development</i>	<i>Year</i>				
	<i>2009</i>	<i>2010</i>	<i>2011</i>	<i>2012</i>	<i>2013</i>
The business sector	18 267.5	..	83.3 20	..	919.4 21
The public sector	19 588.6	..	21 151.3	..	23 261.5
The higher education sector	179.9	..	168	..	267.3
Non-profit organization	414.2	..	499.7	..	520.2
Foreign sources	3 434.3	..	3 538.1	..	4 833
The total volume of	41 884.5	42 759.1	440.4 45	48 43.5	50 801.4

It is being actively discussed in the scientific literature perspective — "Norwegian paradox", based on the following basis — despite low innovation of Norway's economy in recent years, it is relatively wealthy and has a high economic performance. However, in our view, innovation cannot be regarded as the only catalyst for growth. In the case of Norway, the main cause of high development indicators of the economy are became of available natural resources, coupled with favorable conditions over the past 20 years on international energy markets. For the generalized integrated assessment of the innovation sphere in Norway, lets turn to the overall development of its innovative component. The Global Innovation Index, or rating of the world's countries in terms of innovation on the international business school INSEAD<sup>6</sup>, prepared in 2012—2014, testifies to the stable high positions of Norway (14, 16 and 14, respectively). The position of Norway in innovation ranking of the European Commission as a whole, are similar to the GII data.

<sup>6</sup> Global Innovation Index 2014. URL: <http://www.globalinnovationindex.org/content.aspx?page=GII-Home> (Accessed: 01.09.2015)

Table 4

*Norway in international ratings*

Rating	Institution	Position		
		2013	2014	2015
Global Innovation Index <sup>7</sup>	Cornell University, INSEAD, and the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO)	16	14	20
Innovation Union Scoreboard <sup>8</sup>	European Commission	17	16	16
Innovationsindikator <sup>9</sup>	Tysk BDI Deutsche Telekom Stiftung	8	7	14

International rankings of Innovation Norway belongs to the countries of moderate innovators. In the presence of high levels of human resources, public research systems, development of markets for goods, labour and financial markets, there are relatively low levels of investment and their economic impact, development of infrastructure and promotion of innovative enterprises.

Thus, the state, through the extensive network of technology parks, business incubators, innovation centers when interacting with the business-research institutions and not-for-profit organizations stimulates research and innovation designing activity in Norway, commercialization of research results. Direction of the technological modernization of the Norwegian economy remained the same over the past few years. Emphasis is placed on the development of scientific research and innovation and international scientific-technical cooperation. Considerable attention is paid to industries that the state considers the priorities for the economies of countries.

***Research policy***

In Norway the formation and implementation of the research policy, as well as innovation policies are within the competence of the Ministry of education and science and The Ministry of Commerce, industry and fisheries of Norway. The Ministry of education and science of the formation and implementation of the research policy are engaged in research department<sup>10</sup>, the Research Council of Norway<sup>11</sup>. In the Ministry of industry, Commerce and Fisheries it is Department of research and innovation<sup>12</sup> and establishments under the Ministry — Innovation Norway (Innovasjon Norge)<sup>13</sup>, as well as State Industrial Development Corporation of Norway, SIVA. Formation of

<sup>7</sup> Global Innovation Index. URL: <https://www.globalinnovationindex.org/content/page/GII-Home> (Accessed: 01.09.2015)

<sup>8</sup> Innovation Union Scoreboard. URL: [http://ec.europa.eu/growth/industry/innovation/facts-figures/scoreboards/index\\_en.htm](http://ec.europa.eu/growth/industry/innovation/facts-figures/scoreboards/index_en.htm) (Accessed: 01.09.2015)

<sup>9</sup> Innovationsindikator. URL: <http://www.innovationsindikator.de/ergebnisse.html> (Accessed: 01.09.2015)

<sup>10</sup> Department of research. URL: <https://www.regjeringen.no/en/dep/kd/organisation/Departments/department-of-research/id1552/> (Accessed: 01.09.2015)

<sup>11</sup> The Research Council of Norway. URL: [http://www.forskingsradet.no/en/Home\\_page/1177315753906](http://www.forskingsradet.no/en/Home_page/1177315753906) (Accessed: 01.09.2015)

<sup>12</sup> Research and Innovation Department. URL: <https://www.regjeringen.no/en/dep/nfd/organisation/Departments/research-and-innovation-department/id528252/> (Accessed: 01.09.2015)

<sup>13</sup> Innovation Norway. URL: <http://www.innovasjon Norge.no/en/start-page/> (Accessed: 01.09.2015)

sectoral areas engaged in policy research within its competence and other ministries of the Government of Norway Norwegian Polar Institute, implements research policy in the Arctic, is subordinate to the Ministry of the Environment Agency.

Funding of research institutions, universities and colleges as target allocations and in the form of grant support, implemented through the Research Council of Norway, which account for about 25% of the total public funding for research and development in Norway. The Research Council budget in 2013, amounted to 7.4 billion kroner (roughly as in 2012)<sup>14</sup> and 8.5 billion kroons in 2015 the main contribution to the budget of the Council give the Ministry of education and research and the Ministry of industry, trade and fisheries. Money the Council allocates projects usually on a competitive basis, they also spent on improving infrastructure, are sent to universities for research. By 2020, the Norwegian Research Council plans to increase public spending on science to the level of 1.2% of GDP, while increasing its share in the financing of research activities in Norway.

A substantial proportion of the programmes of financial support for research activities in Norway takes support international projects. For example, the cost of "innovative" Norway in 2014 on international research projects accounted for 50% of all funds spent. The asserted total spending of Norway at the European framework programme Horizon 2020 will amount to 16 billion NOK, or 2 billion euros<sup>15</sup>. Fundamental documents forming the objectives and tasks of scientific and research policies in Norway, as well as research priorities and target indicators is a complex national strategies: Research for innovation and sustainability: the strategy of the Research Council of Norway in the period 2015-2020 timeframe. (Research for innovation and sustainability: strategy for the research council of Norway 2015-2020)<sup>16</sup>; International strategy for the period 2010-2020 (International strategy 2010-2020)<sup>17</sup>; The strategy for the development of national research infrastructure for the period 2012-2017 timeframe. (National strategy for research infrastructure 2012-2017); as well as a set of sectoral and regional strategies and programmes<sup>18</sup>.

The Norwegian Research Council's Strategy for the sector research institutions for the period 2014-2018 timeframe. The Research Council's strategy for the research institute sector 2014-

---

<sup>14</sup> The research budget. URL: <http://www.forskingsradet.no/en/Budget/1185261825597> (Accessed: 01.09.2015)

<sup>15</sup> Norway to participate in Horizon 2020. URL: <http://horizon2020projects.com/global-collaboration/norway-to-participate-in-horizon-2020/> (Accessed: 01.09.2015)

<sup>16</sup> Main strategy of the Research Council. URL: [http://www.forskingsradet.no/en/Main\\_strategy\\_of\\_the\\_Research\\_Council/1185261825635](http://www.forskingsradet.no/en/Main_strategy_of_the_Research_Council/1185261825635) (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>17</sup> Strategy for International Cooperation 2010–2020. URL: [http://www.forskingsradet.no/en/International\\_strategy/1253964686548](http://www.forskingsradet.no/en/International_strategy/1253964686548) (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>18</sup> Other strategic plans and policy documents. URL: [http://www.forskingsradet.no/en/Other\\_strategic\\_plans/1185261825639](http://www.forskingsradet.no/en/Other_strategic_plans/1185261825639)(Accessed: 11 March 2016)

2018; The Research Council's policy for R&D at university colleges 2014-2018; The Research Council's policy for basic research 2015-2020; Regional policy 2014-2018.

### ***Research policy in the Arctic***

The objectives of the research the Norwegian policy are to achieve and maintain sustainable development of a society based on green technologies, and increasing the share of high-tech industries in all sectors of the economy. Research policy objectives include: increasing investments in advanced research and innovation; quality improvement and increase in volumes of Norwegian research; support for research and development, aimed at finding lasting solutions to the development of society and business; stimulate the development of an innovative economy; the total increase of innovative technologies and their availability in all spheres of public activity; strengthening international cooperation and active participation in the research initiatives of the EU. Priority directions of research activities, in general, correspond to the priorities of the scientific innovation policy: oil and gas industry; information and communication technologies; bio-and nanotechnologies; shipbuilding and ship machinery; Ecology; renewable energy and resource efficiency; medical technologies.

Development of education and science in the North and international cooperation in the Arctic region, the Norwegian authorities pay great attention to the mid-2000s. The regulatory framework suggests that the Arctic will remain a priority region for the Norwegian Government in the next few decades. It should be noted that the national specifics of the conceptual apparatus is the practice of naming polar and polar regions of the country districts of the far North, as reflected in *the strategy for the development of the far North (Nordområdene : Visjon og virkemidler) on-snovopolagaûsem* document approved by Parliament in 2011 and defines benchmarks internal and foreign policy of Norway in the Arctic until 2030. Among the main priorities of the strategy is the strengthening of cooperation with Russia and the sustainable management of natural resources. In accordance with the development strategy of the far North, the Government has approved a set of documents that define and regulate research policy in the Arctic region: Research strategy for the Northern Areas 2011—2016); Regional policy 2014—2018; Norwegian polar research, Research Policy 2014—2023. These documents have programmatic, ideological function, and are focused on a description of the mechanisms of interaction between the national and regional executive authorities with scientific and academic institutions in Norway, defining research priorities and target indicators.

***The aims and objectives of research policy in the Arctic.*** *Development strategy of the far North (Nordområdene: Visjon og virkemidler)* — science and education are the first of fifteen prior-

ity areas defined in the document. Landmark scientific and educational policy is marked with an ambitious goal of Norway's leading position in research activities in the far north of the remaining fourteen paragraphs to introduce technologies and evidence-based management methods pass Rod line within the objectives of directions. Among the key research objectives in the strategy are highlighted: 1) development of a system to support research teams in the framework of the activities of the Fram-Center in the city of Tromsø, with the aim of achieving them leading international position in the field of environment and climate studies of the far North; 2) construction of the research fleet Norway; 3) not less than 50% increase in funding research projects academics of Northern Norway through the "Barents 2020", that in 2015 was transformed into the Arctic programme 2030; 4) consolidation resources institutions of science and education of the Arctic focus, coordination and cooperation between them in order to improve the quality of knowledge and optimizing the use of available resources; 5) support for higher education and science as key priorities of the Norwegian development at Svalbard (Svalbard).

*Research strategy for the Northern Areas 2011—2016* specifies the priority research areas in Northern Norway. The documents identified three main objectives of research policy: ensuring high-quality research, the development of international research cooperation and the strengthening of the role of science in the industrial development in the North. Identified priority research areas: study of the Arctic in the international geopolitical and legal contexts; environmental issues and biological resources; energy, oil and mineral resources, including the establishment of environmental management system, the development and introduction of green technologies for the extraction of mineral resources; social development in the Arctic and far North (in particular, infrastructure, labour resources innovative development industry; the study and use of the unique research capabilities of the region (climate, geography, and culture). The most important instrument in the framework of the strategy designated international scientific cooperation, both through the development of network projects and academic mobility, exchange of knowledge, the establishment of common databases.

*Regional policy for the period 2014—2018* is aimed at laying the foundations of scientific interaction between the regions of Norway and central Governments and research organizations document is devoted to the description of mechanisms to coordinate research and innovation activities of the regional scientific and educational institutions, with the Norwegian research So-wetom, as well as the description of the tools of financial support of scientific and innovation activities in the area of improving the quality of research and the growth of international interaction. Among the instruments of financial support from a special place is given to the formation of mixed

funds through the development of interaction between Innovation Norway ", "SIVA», regional research funds, regional and local authorities.

*Norwegian polar research, Research Policy 2014—2023* defines the list of research priorities in the Arctic and Antarctic and aims to develop sustainable, science-based resource management mechanisms and the environment, as well as the development of mechanisms for management of industrial and social development of the regions of the far north of Norway, in order to make the priority topics of research activities in the Arctic program defines two main groups of research: sectoral and cross-cutting, in which formulated 7 thematic subgroups comprising 38 key research themes.

The main objective of research policy in the North of Norway — knowledge needed for economic and social development of the northern territories, to provide leadership in international scientific exploration of the Arctic region. Priority areas of scientific activity is the environment, sustainable use of resources, living conditions. The measures envisaged by the above-mentioned legal acts are implemented sectoral ministries and subordinate them to scientific centres, Research Council of Norway, Innovation Norway (Innovasjon Norge), the Industrial Development Corporation of Norway State "SIVA". The most important role in implementing research on priority directions is given to higher education institutions of Nordland, Troms and Finnmark, and research centres in Northern Norway: Fram-Center (Research Centre for the far North on climate and the environment), Norwegian Polar Institute. A central place to coordinate research activities in Norway in the Arctic defined Fram-Center located in the city of Tromsø Troms province.

One of the most important tasks of the Arctic Norwegian policy is positioning the country as a leading platform for discussing the problems of the region and an international research policy. To consolidate efforts of all stakeholders, it is necessary to define Arctic research policy and its subjects. In 2007, Tromsø became the host for the annual International Forum "Arctic frontiers", which discusses a broad range of issues related to the polar regions, including research and evaluation of their results in Tromsø are also the Secretariat of the Arctic Council The Secretariat Of The Arctic Council. In 2015, it was decided to move to Tromsø from Copenhagen by the Secretariat of the Arctic Council on indigenous peoples (IPS)

Thus, since the mid-2000's. Norway has been pursuing a consistent policy in the field of Arctic research aimed at ensuring the country's superiority in this field. The priority areas of research are formulated in line with the challenges facing the Kingdom in the region. A broad regulatory framework, defined financial instruments supporting research. Norwegian research in the Arctic is not only aimed at addressing fundamental scientific problems, but are closely linked with the development of the northern regions of the country.

### *Scientific and educational potential of the Northern Territories of Norway*

Nordland, Troms, Finnmark and Svalbard (Svalbard) have considerable scientific-educational and research capacity thanks to a well-developed system of higher scientific and educational institutions (universities, University colleges), and research centers. It should be noted that the system of higher education in Norway is very active in the field of research, providing about a third of the country's R&D <sup>19</sup>. The innovation potential of North Norway is actively developed using grant support "Innovation Norway. On the sum of received grants from the 20 provinces of Norway: Nordland is at 2<sup>nd</sup> place, Finnmark on the 5<sup>th</sup>, Troms on the 8<sup>th</sup>, Svalbard in 20<sup>th</sup>. They give 10% — 30% of the financing of the new organizations (for less than 3 years).

In regional scientific and educational potential cut Norway in the Arctic region is as follows. From January 1, 2016, in the province of *Nordland* happened consolidation of scientific and educational institutions by combining university colleges Nesna and North Trøndelag with University of Nordland, thereby creating Nord University. *Nesna University College* founded in 1918, was reorganized in 1994. It has approximately 1100 people and runs 110 people (90 teachers.). It is divided into teacher training Institute, the Institute for the training of nurses, Institute of information and computer technologies. The College is mainly pedagogical orientation.

*Nord University (formerly University of Nordland)* was created in 2016, on the basis of University of Nordland, which from January 1 was composed of university colleges of Nesna and Northern Trendelag. Bodø University College, from which arose the University of Nordland, existed from 1994 yr. is located in Bodø, Nordland, the provincial capital, and has offices in eight other cities. It taught the order of 7000 students, employs about 700 people (teachers — 350). Divided into business school faculty training, Department of biological sciences and aquaculture, Faculty of social sciences. There are more than 30 research groups — in practically all areas of training. Within the framework of a PhD at the University there were the following defenses of dissertations: 2012 — 14, 2013 — 19, 2014 — 20. The University has a wide variety of educational programs with an emphasis on the social sciences, business administration, and management of marine resources, such as: Epigenetics in aquaculture, mining in the Arctic. Nordland has approximately 9000 students (including foreigners) and employs approximately 900 employees, including about 540 teachers.

*Narvik University College (Narvik University College)* founded in January 1, 1994 has 1800 students, 20% of them foreign students. There are about 160 Personnel (approximately 100 teachers.) divided by the Faculty and Faculty of health. In January 1, 2016 became part of the Uni-

---

<sup>19</sup> The higher education sector is an important R&D performer in the Nordic countries. URL: <http://www.nifu.no/en/news/universitets-og-hogskolesektor-en-viktig-fou-aktor-i-norden/> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

versity of Tromsø. Narvik University College has a strong applied focus in industry, construction (including in cold climates) and various modern technologies, including space.

In the province *Troms* functions *Harstad University College*. The College was established in 1983, at the moment it has approximately 1 300 people and runs 120 persons (approximately 100 teachers). Consists of the Office of business management and Social Sciences (group management and organization, group service), Department of health and social work (social education group, a group of nursing, child protection unit, the Group further education) College has social and entrepreneurial orientation. Since January 1 2016, it became a part of the University of Tromsø.

*University of Tromsø — Arctic University of Norway* was established in 1968 and opened in 1972, in 2009 it was merged with Tromsø University College, with 2013 — with University College Finnmark, 2016 — with the University College Harstad and Narvik. Located in the provincial capital city of Tromsø, Troms County. The University has approximately 12000 people and operates approximately 2 900 people (of whom teachers — 1 200 persons). 20% of teachers and 10% of students are foreign nationals working and studying in the University. Consists of the Faculty of public health, the Faculty of science and technology, Faculty of Humanities and social sciences and education, Faculty of biological sciences, fisheries and economy, Faculty of Arts, Faculty of law. Finnmark University College is considered a separate faculty. Four campuses are located in Tromsø, Alta, Hammerfest, and Kirkenes. There are 12 research centres associated with biology, marine resources, medicine, and culture. The University is also responsible the Barents Institute, specializing in the study of border territories of the Barents Euro-Arctic region, cross-border relations and the impact of economic activity on the Northern community. Budget of the University for the 20% consists of grants to research, almost half of which is financed by the Research Council. Within the framework of a PhD program the University was the following defenses of dissertations: 2012 — 110; 2013 — 123, 2014 — 101. Educational programmes cover both theoretical and practical areas in almost all possible spheres, ranging from international relations to applied mathematics. For example, here is a short list of Arctic research subjects undertaken by university teams: regulation of Arctic fish nutrition, monitoring and assessment of natural processes in the Arctic, the study of gas hydrates in the Arctic (past and present), climate change and disease of deer, living conditions in the Arctic. In the universities of Troms studies about 13 000 students, including foreigners, and in higher education about 3000 people are employed, of whom approximately 2 200 teachers. University of Tromsø is the main component of the science and technology cluster, which also includes institutes leading applied research and commercialization (NORUT NOFIMA, etc.)

*The Fram Centre* is coordinating the largest research centre in Norway in the Arctic. Its full name — High North Research Center for Climate and Environment, Center for research on climate and the environment in the extreme North. It brings together and coordinates the activities of about 20 organizations and institutions engaged in Arctic research. In particular, CICERO — Center for international climate and environmental research, Institute of marine research, the national coastal administration, Norwegian Polar Institute, the Meteorological Institute, Norway map service, geological survey, Akvaplan Niva and others. The main objective of the Center is to provide conditions for multidisciplinary research activities aimed at obtaining qualitatively new knowledge enable you to develop effective methods of resource management and environmental protection in the North. In the sphere of his interests in climate study, ice, the sea, the impact of industry and pollution on ecosystems. Centre under the authority of the Committee, consisting of representatives of ministries, seven from which leadership is Ministry of nature and environment protection.

*Norwegian Polar Institute* is one of the leading research institutions in Norway in the Arctic region focused on organizing and conducting research on environmental monitoring in the Arctic and Antarctic Institute is part of the Fram-TSentra and is subordinate to the Ministry of nature and environment protection. NPI actively participates in the development of research policy in the Arctic, as well as in the management of the northern territories of Norway, coordinates research activities of other organizations in the Norwegian sector of the Arctic. The Institute has about 160 employees<sup>20</sup>, has its own research vessel (2017 planned commissioning of another), the research station and Observatory on the archipelago of Svalbard. The Institute operates the Centre for the study of ice, climate and ecosystems, created in 2009.

In the province of **Finnmark** there is *Finnmark University College*. From 2013 is a part of the University of Tromsø as a separate faculty, has institutions of social work, physical culture and sport, tourism and the study of the North. *Sami University College* established in 1989 is located in Kautokeino. Has about 150 students, 52 staff members. Components: outlet of crafts and Sciences, Department of languages, Department of social sciences. Here studied English and Sami languages, Sami culture and history, traditional way of life of the Sami people. Programmes at PhD level are closely associated with universities in Norway and other countries and include linguistics, the study of culture, literature and social sciences.

*Svalbard University Centre* — the northernmost research and educational center in Norway in the world, is located in p. Longyear archipelago **Svalbard**. Founded in 1993, and is the fruit of

---

<sup>20</sup> Norwegian Polar Institute's organization. URL: <http://www.npolar.no/en/about-us/organization/>(Accessed: 11 March 2016)

the cooperation of the universities of Oslo, Bergen, Tromsø and the Norwegian University of science and engineering. There there are about 450 students annually, of whom not less than 50% of foreign students has been working for about 100 employees, including faculty, 65 people. University Centre has an ambitious goal to become a leading international Center for learning and teaching in the Arctic by 2020. The Center provides courses level of Bachelor, master and PhD in the following areas: the Arctic biology, Arctic geology, Arctic Geophysics, Arctic technology. He also serves as a logistic base for organizing and conducting field research in the archipelago. Total number of taught subjects — more than 60. Pronounced applied focus, the Center is focused on training of specialists in various scientific and technological aspects of the exploration and exploitation of the Arctic, including in the areas of sustainable development and conservation of the environment. The Centre implemented an extensive programme of research on topics such as: the study of Cretaceous basins of the far North, security, industrial development and transport routes in the Arctic, creating a photographic data of invertebrates.

#### ***Scientific and educational international cooperation In the Arctic region***

Among the fifteen priorities of strategy of development of the far North are indicated: strengthening and developing cooperation with the Arctic States and other partners with common interests in the Arctic (No. 6); strengthening of cooperation in the Arctic Council and regional venues such as the Barents and Northern dimension cooperation (No. 7), as well as the development of infrastructure in the North, in cooperation with neighbouring countries to support economic development (No. 13). The Norwegian Foreign Ministry to coordinate the implementation of the Arctic policy, including issues relating to Svalbard and international cooperation, is entrusted to the extreme north, Arctic issues and resources (Seksjon for nordområdene, polarsaker og ressurser)<sup>21</sup>. In the functional section is also responsible for management of marine resources and energy in the Arctic in the context of the security policy and foreign policy is in section Office of the Department of security and the far North (Avdeling for sikkerhetspolitikk og nordområdene). The Ministry directly coordinates the running in 2015, 2011. The program «Arctic» 2030 (Arktis 2030)<sup>22</sup>, designed to support projects with a view to implementing the priorities of the Norwegian Government in the far North. In 2015, the program is funding projects worth 150 million Norwegian kroner. Arctic programme task force 2030 are, first of all, scientific and educational institutions and

<sup>21</sup> Section for the High North, Polar Affairs and Marine Resources. URL: [https://www.regjeringen.no/en/dep/ud/organisation/departments/security\\_policy/polar\\_affairs/id85981/](https://www.regjeringen.no/en/dep/ud/organisation/departments/security_policy/polar_affairs/id85981/) (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>22</sup> Arktis 2030. URL: <https://www.regjeringen.no/no/aktuelt/arktis-2030/id2356599/> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

enterprises<sup>23</sup>. In addition, projects involving foreign partners are given priority in the selection of applications. "Arctica" 2030 program included previous program "Barents 2020" (Barents 2020), which is also coordinated by the Foreign Ministry of Norway. Extension of the geographical scope of the programme (from the Arctic Barents region) demonstrates the growing value of the Arctic in the foreign policy course of the country.

*Norwegian Centre for cooperation in the field of education (for internasjonale Senter av utdanning, abbr. Siu)* is a subordinate Agency of the Ministry of education and science of Norway (Kunnskapsdepartementet)<sup>24</sup>. The Centre promotes international cooperation and internationalisation of Norwegian education and conducts information and analytical work in this direction. SIU administers a number of programmes aimed at the development of the international educational cooperation in the Arctic region. First of all, this program is High North Programme 2013-2018, the purpose of which is to expand and spread knowledge about far North. The total budget of the programme amounts to 53 million Norwegian kroner. Program supports educational projects between universities of Norway, Russia, Canada, the United States, Japan, China, the Republic of Korea, in particular projects of academic mobility, joint seminars, developing joint courses (including intensive courses, summer schools), educational programmes, joint scientific manuals, etc. Under the coordination of the SIU program of cooperation with Russia 2011-2016 (Cooperation programme with Russia)<sup>25</sup>, aimed at developing long-term cooperation between Russian and Norwegian universities in Humanities and social sciences, business development, oil and gas industry, the study of oceans and seas, field KlimATA and energy, environmental sciences and the sustainable use of resources, health. The program funds projects of academic mobility, joint seminars, developing joint courses (including intensive courses, summer schools), educational programmes, joint scientific manuals, etc. The Centre coordinates a programme of fellowships for study in the extreme north (Fellowship programme for Studies in the High North)<sup>26</sup>, which offers scholarships to students from Canada, the United States, Russia, South Korea and the United States to study at universities in North Norway for a period of one to two semesters.

<sup>23</sup> Utlysning av nordområdemidler – Arktis 2030. URL: [https://www.regjeringen.no/no/dep/ud/tilskuddsmidler/utlysning\\_tilskudd/arktis-2030/id2356612/](https://www.regjeringen.no/no/dep/ud/tilskuddsmidler/utlysning_tilskudd/arktis-2030/id2356612/) (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>24</sup> Senter for internasjonalisering av utdanning. URL: <http://siu.no/> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>25</sup> Cooperation Programme with Russia 2011-2016. URL: <http://siu.no/eng/Programme-information/BRICS-and-Eurasia/Cooperation-Programme-with-Russia-2011-2016> (дата обращения: 11.03.2016)

<sup>26</sup> Fellowship programme for Studies in the High North. URL: <http://siu.no/eng/Programme-information/North-America-and-the-High-North/Fellowship-programme-for-Studies-in-the-High-North> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

*The Norwegian Research Council (abbr. Nees, Norwegian. Norges forskningsråd)*<sup>27</sup> is a subordinate Agency of the Ministry of education and science of Norway (Kunn-skapsdepartementet.) NEES plays a major role in the development and implementation of research policy in Norway. Its other functions are to promote Norwegian science, including abroad, advising the Government on policy research, management of funds allocated for research, distribution of grants, internationalization of the Norwegian science. NIS is also platform interaction between scientists and research customers. Two major programmes, aimed at research in the Arctic, are Polar Research program (Polar Research programme, POLARPROG), Russia and the far North/Arctic (Russia and the High North/Arctic, NORRUSS)<sup>28</sup>. Various aspects of studying the Arctic funded under other programmes of NIS: "space research" (Space Research, ROMFORSKNING), oceans and coastal areas (The Oceans and Coastal Areas, HAVKYST), "Norwegian environmental studies 2015» (Norwegian environmental research towards 2015, MILJO2015)<sup>29</sup>, "Large-scale oil and gas research program "(Large-scale Programme for Petroleum Research, PETROMAKS2)<sup>30</sup>, (Large-scale Programme on Climate Research, KLIMAFORSK)<sup>31</sup>. Norwegian Research Council funded projects gives priority to applications from foreign partners.

A special programme of support for the international scientific and educational cooperation, jointly implemented with the NIS and SIU the International program is Partnerships for Excellent Education and Research (INTPART)<sup>32</sup>. the programme finances long-term cooperation projects between Norwegian scientific and educational institutions and leading academic groups from Brazil, Canada, China, India, Japan, Russia, South Africa and the United States also NEES and SIU jointly implement the program UTFORSK<sup>33</sup>, the purpose of which is to support educational cooperation within the framework of existing research projects with Norwegian universities

<sup>27</sup> Forskningsrådet si rolle. URL: [http://www.forskningsradet.no/no/Visjon\\_og\\_mandat/1138785796497](http://www.forskningsradet.no/no/Visjon_og_mandat/1138785796497) (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>28</sup> Polar Research programme (POLARPROG). URL: [http://www.forskningsradet.no/prognett-polarforskning/Home\\_page/1231229969357](http://www.forskningsradet.no/prognett-polarforskning/Home_page/1231229969357). Russia and the High North/Arctic (NORRUSS). URL: <http://www.forskningsradet.no/servlet/Satellite?c=Page&pagename=geopolitikk-nord%2FHovedsidemal&cid=1226994122323&langvariant=en> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>29</sup> Romforskning. URL: <http://www.forskningsradet.no/servlet/Satellite?c=Page&cid=1228296488592&pagename=romforsk%2FHovedsidemal>. The Oceans and Coastal Areas (HAVKYST). URL: <http://www.forskningsradet.no/servlet/Satellite?c=Page&cid=1226994156364&p=1226994156364&pagename=havkyst%2FHovedsidemal>. Norwegian environmental research towards 2015 (MILJO2015). URL: <http://www.forskningsradet.no/servlet/Satellite?c=Page&cid=1224697848161&p=1224697848161&pagename=miljo2015%2FHovedsidemal> (Accessed: 11 March 2016).

<sup>30</sup> Large-scale Programme for Petroleum Research (PETROMAKS2). URL: [http://www.forskningsradet.no/prognett-petromaks2/Home\\_page/1253980921309](http://www.forskningsradet.no/prognett-petromaks2/Home_page/1253980921309) (Accessed: 11 March 2016).

<sup>31</sup> Large-scale Programme on Climate Research (KLIMAFORSK). URL: <http://www.forskningsradet.no/servlet/Satellite> (Accessed: 11 March 2016).

<sup>32</sup> International Partnerships for Excellent Education and Research (INTPART). URL: <http://www.forskningsradet.no/prognett-internasjonale-stipend/Homepage/1224066982949> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>33</sup> UTFORSK. URL: <http://siu.no/eng/Programme-information/BRICS-and-Eurasia/UTFORSK> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

BRICS. According to the results of the first competition of the program supported eight projects. The annual budget of the programme UTFORSK makes about 17 million Norwegian kroner.

*Norwegian Barents Secretariat* (NOK. Barentssekretariatet, abbr. NBS) is Norwegian inter-regional organization owned by the three regions in Northern Norway: Nordland, Troms and Finnmark<sup>34</sup>. On behalf of the Foreign Ministry, the Norwegian Barents Secretariat finances a bilateral Norwegian-Russian cooperation projects in the Barents region. NBS has funded around 200 Norwegian-Russian projects annually with a total budget of 35 million. NOK and serves as a resource and focal point for these projects. Barents Secretariat coordinates activities relating to the harmonization of national policies with regional priorities within the framework of multilateral cooperation in the Barents. NBS also serves as a Resource Center for Councils, committees and working groups of the Barents cooperation system. The goal of the program of financing of projects is the establishment of reliable links for NBS between Norwegians and Russians living in the North. In addition to the main programme, there are a few routines that aim to support the priority areas: BarentsKult (support for large cross-border cultural and art projects), "the Barents Regional youth program (funding for multilateral youth projects in the Barents region) projects," "Sport Health Foundation", "Barents-journalism without borders".

Norway builds cooperation on Arctic research, both at the multilateral and bilateral levels. The Kingdom is a member and actively participates in the activities of specialized international organizations. Norway is one of the founding countries of *the Arctic Council*<sup>35</sup>. The Council is a successful example of international scientific cooperation: international working groups and task forces involved in preparation of assessment and case studies and reports, in close collaboration with Through States and international and other organizations. Norway considers the Arctic Council as an effective tool of interaction between the States of the region and the promotion of national interests. Strengthening the role and authority of the Arctic Council is one of the tasks of the Norwegian Arctic strategy. Indicator of the strong position of Norway in the Arctic Council is the establishment in 2012, Tromsø of the Permanent Secretariat of the organization.

*The Barents Euro-Arctic Council (BEAC)*<sup>36</sup> — Regional Forum, whose goal is to promote the sustainable development of the region, bilateral and multilateral cooperation in the fields of economy, trade, science and technology, the environment, infrastructure, education and cultural exchanges, tourism, as well as projects aimed at improving the situation of indigenous peoples of the North. Development of cooperation in the Barents region is one of the tasks of the Norwegian

<sup>34</sup> The Norwegian Barents Secretariat. URL: <https://www.barents.no/?MId1=2428> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>35</sup> The Arctic Council. URL: <http://www.arctic-council.org/index.php/en/> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>36</sup> Barents Euro-Arctic Council. URL: <http://www.beac.st/en> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

Arctic strategy. Reaffirmation of the strong position of Norway in BEAC is the fact the headquarters of the International Barents Secretariat is located on its territory (Kirkenes). Development of cooperation in the field of education and science is one of the priorities of the BEAC. In the Declaration of the Summit of Heads of Government of the countries members of the BEAC 3—4 June 2013 (Kirkenes 2.0 Declaration) expressed full support for the further strengthening of cooperation in the field of education, research and innovation»<sup>37</sup>. Norway participates actively in the work of the Joint Working Group on education and science of the Barents region, operating at both the national level (Norway, Finland, Sweden, Russia) and regional level (13 regions BEAR). The Working Group is an important mechanism for the development of scientific and educational cooperation in the Barents region and brings together 14 universities in the northern territories of Norway, Finland, Sweden and Russia. This is a serious tool for increasing scientific and educational cooperation, the impact of universities on decision-making at federal and regional level and the development of policy in the Barents region in the field of education and science. From 2011 to 2013 the Working Group was jointly led by Northern (Arctic) Federal University and the Arctic University of Norway (Tromsø).

Norway is one of the founding countries of *the Nordic Council of Ministers* (Nordic Council of Ministers, an abbr. NCM) is an intergovernmental forum for coordination and cooperation between the Nordic countries (Norway, Sweden, Denmark, Finland, Iceland). Norway had participated actively in the work of the Forum, including Nordforsk whose purpose is to finance and the development of scientific cooperation between the Nordic countries<sup>38</sup>. By Norway coordination of participation in the program Nordforsk carries out the Research Council of Norway., 2012 with NCM it implements a number of programmes aimed at strengthening scientific cooperation on Arctic issues. The Arctic cooperation programme 2015-2017 (The Nordic Council of Ministers' Arctic Co-operation > Programme 2015-2017)<sup>39</sup> aims to support sustainable development in the region in four priority areas: peoples; sustainable economic development; environment, nature and climate; education and improving competencies. The annual budget of the programme amounts to approximately 10 million DKr. In 2014-2015 hosted the first contest Nordforsk on financing for

---

<sup>37</sup> Deklaratsiya po itogam vstrechi glav pravitelstv stran-chlenov SBER. Kirkenes, 3—4 iunya 2013 goda. URL: <http://government.ru/media/files/41d46b75c7931f08b9b7.pdf> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>38</sup> Nordforsk. URL: <http://www.nordforsk.org/en> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>39</sup> The Nordic Council of Ministers' Arctic Co-operation Programme 2015-2017. URL: <http://www.norden.org/en/nordic-council-of-ministers/ministers-for-co-operation-mr-sam/the-arctic/the-nordic-council-of-ministers-arctic-co-operation-programme-2015-2017> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

«Northerncenters of Arctic Research" (Nordic Centres of Excellence in Arctic research)<sup>40</sup>. The aim of the competition was to strengthen the Nordic research through the development of long-term cooperation. The budget of the contest was about 85 million Norwegian kroner. Nordforsk financing a programme of cooperation with Russia, the Nordic countries (Nordic-Russian Co-operation programme)<sup>41</sup>, aimed at supporting the development of academic mobility, networking, developing joint courses and others forms of cooperation between the universities of Russia and Northern countries. ProGram is administered by the Norwegian Centre for cooperation in the field of education (SIU). Within the framework of Nordic co-operation is to support the educational cooperation (projects, academic mobility) through the Nordplus<sup>42</sup>. Project applications application process administered by the Norwegian Centre for cooperation in the field of education (SIU).

Not being a member of *the European Union*, through agreements Norway is party to all major research and educational programs of the EU, including relevant to Arctic region. Norwegian Research Council coordinates the participation of Norwegian organizations in the programme "Horizon 2020", including competition "European cooperation in the field of polar research (European polar researchcooperation)<sup>43</sup>. Norwegian Centre for cooperation in the field of education (SIU) is the national Norwegian Centre European programme Erasmus + supporting academic mobility in the field of education, youth and Sport also Norway is party to the mobility of researchers programme EURAXESS<sup>44</sup>. Arctic Norwegian University (a division of the Barents Institute, city of Kirkenes) is a member of the northern dimension Institute (ISI), which represents an open community network for universities and research institutions, bringing together experts in the priority sectors of the northern dimension policy (energy, health, tourism, culture and higher education).

15 Norwegian universities and scientific organizations are members of the University of the Arctic (University of the Arctic) is the largest international network of educational and research institutions in the far North (more than 170 organizations from the Arctic and the rest of the world and about 1 million students), the leading research activities in the North. The main objective of the Consortium is the production of knowledge and the development of scientific capacity for the sustainable development of the circumpolar region and favourable conditions for residents of the North. Norway supports the University of the Arctic through the establishment of a Fund for UArctic

<sup>40</sup> Funding available for Nordic Centres of Excellence in Arctic research. URL: <http://www.nordforsk.org/en/news/funding-available-for-nordic-centres-of-excellence-in-arctic-research> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>41</sup> Nordic-Russian Cooperation. URL: <http://siu.no/eng/Programme-information/BRICS-and-Eurasia/Nordic-Russian-cooperation> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>42</sup> Nordplus. URL: <http://www.nordplusonline.org/> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>43</sup> European polar research cooperation. URL: <http://ec.europa.eu/research/participants/portal/desktop/en/opportunities/h2020/topics/535-bg-15-2014.html> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

<sup>44</sup> EURAXESS - Researchers in Motion. URL: <http://ec.europa.eu/euraxess/> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

Norway, which administers the University of Tromsø. The Fund is financed through support projects thematic networks University of Arctic, Circumpolar mobility Fund North-to-North, long-term projects such as Go North, Global Access, North-to-North plus and others. Is active engagement of scientists within the framework of the activities of the thematic networks of expertise in different areas of science and technologyologij (total 33, including ecology, energy geopolitics, Northern Territories management, commercialization of scientific developments in the North, etc.). Consortium participants, including Russian and Norwegian universities, provide analytical and expert support to the activities of the working groups. In particular, studies are being conducted with a view to achieving the objectives of the Arctic monitoring and assessment programme. Introduced to this project UCCARP International Arctic Science Committee on identifying priority areas of Arctic research and identify the needs of the inhabitants of the northern regions of the Arctic University administers the international academic mobility program North-to-North (North2North)<sup>45</sup>, which is funded by including the Norwegian Ministry of Foreign Affairs. Under the program, students and academics — consortium members receive financial support for training, internships, exchanges, participation in summer schools, etc. forms of mobility. In addition to visiting the mobility of Norwegian students in universities of Arctic countries, the program offers scholarships to Russian students to study at Norwegian universities and University Centre of Svalbard.

Analyzed information suggests that, to date, Norway considers the international scientific-educational cooperation as one of the key instruments for achieving sustainable development in the Arctic and addressing national challenges in the region. Participation in a variety of formats for international cooperation, the development of research infrastructure, financial support to national and international research programmes, academic mobility, educational development allow you to build effective communication with almost all the countries active in the Arctic region.

### ***Conclusion***

Thus, since the mid-2000s Norway has been pursuing a consistent policy in the field of Arctic research aimed at ensuring the country's superiority in this field. As a result of the priority areas of research are formulated in line with the challenges facing the Kingdom in the region. A broad regulatory framework, defined financial instruments supporting research. Norwegian research in the Arctic is not only aimed at addressing fundamental scientific problems, but also closely linked with the development of the northern regions of the country.

Norway innovation policy is implemented through the extensive network of technology parks, business incubators, innovation centers when interacting with business, academic institu-

---

<sup>45</sup> About north2north. URL: <http://education.uarctic.org/mobility/about-north2north/> (Accessed: 11 March 2016)

tions and non-profit organizations. It aims at stimulating research and innovation activity, commercialization of research results, development of international scientific and technological cooperation in such priority areas as the oil and gas industry, information and communications technology, bio-and nanotechnologies, shipbuilding and ship arrangements, environment, renewable energy and resource conservation, medical technology. However, expenses for research and development in the volume of GDP is the lowest among the Nordic countries, and innovative activity the country demonstrates low rates among European countries.

International scientific-educational cooperation is considered the Norwegian Government as one of the key instruments for achieving sustainable development in the Arctic and addressing national challenges in the region. Participation in a variety of formats for international cooperation, the development of research infrastructure, financial support to national and international research programmes, academic mobility, educational development allow you to build effective communication with almost all the countries active in the Arctic region.

Given the strategic importance of the Arctic in terms of security, economic development, the preservation of biodiversity and unique cultures of the peoples of the North, one of the key priorities of the Russian Federation is seen as development and implementation of coherent policies in the field of science and education in the region. In this regard, certainly seems necessary accounting 10-year-old Norwegian works in this direction.

## References

1. Tevlina V.V. Nauchno-obrazovatel'naja politika v Norvegii: nacional'nye i obshhemiroye tendencii razvitija // *Vestnik SAFU, gumanit. i social'nye nauki*. 2012. №2.
2. *Indikatoriy innovacionnoj dejatel'nosti: 2015: statisticheskij sbornik* / N.V. Gorodnikova, L.M. Gohberg, K.A. Ditkovskij i dr. M.: NIU VShE, 2015. 320 s.

## Russian Arctic or the Arctic zone

© **Yury F. Lukin** Doctor of Historical Sciences, professor, editor in chief of the journal "Arctic and North", Honored Worker of Higher Education of the Russian Federation.

**Abstract.** Analysis of data collection results on the topic "Russian Arctic or the Arctic zone"

**Keywords:** *Russian Arctic, the Arctic zone, the Far North of Russia*

The relevance of the the problem is determined by the need for a new federal law "on the development of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation (hereinafter — AZRF). the main ideas of the Bill, as indicated in the concept of the project is the formation of the FZ, unified legal system to ensure the integrated development of the macro-region, by which is meant the process viable, continuous aimed natural changes over time, characterized by the transition AZRF in a new, improved State in the sphere of social development, economy, natural resources and environment protection, international cooperation activities. The draft prepared by FZ under AZRF refers to the territory of the Arctic region, which is subject to the jurisdiction of the Russian Federation. In connection with the discussion of the draft federal law "on the development of AZRF", it is the task of analyzing the quality of its content validity.

**Goal.** The study conducted by "Arctic and North" and "Political Education" journals was to more deeply acquaint citizens of Russian Federation with the Arctic issues, publish materials, hear and understand the opinion of the people, their expectations and concerns about the development of the draft FZ on AZRF. In a study obtained expert opinions and synthesized the scientific and political elite on topical issues of socio-economic development of the Russian Arctic, followed by an open vote of readers of "political education".

**Methods.** The methods used were expert and interactive surveys. With 18 February to March 11, 2016 to the questions posed in the questionnaire replies were received from the experts: NAFU (4), the universities of St. Petersburg (3), the Kola Science Centre RAS (2) FGBUN Federal Research Center for integrated study of the Arctic run "(1), VNII Okeangeologii (1), the Council of the Federal Assembly of the Russian Federation (1), Institute of Europe, RAS (1), North-Eastern Federal University (1), the legislature of Yamal-Nenets Autonomous district (1) other organizations (1). Among them are 10 doctors of Science: L.E. Vostryakov, N.P. Zalyvskij, V.N. Konyshchev, Y.F. Lukin, V.S. Selin, A. Sergunin, A.K. Tulokhonov, V.I. Ulyanovskiy, S. Kharyuchi, M.H. Shraga; 5 candidates of Sciences: V.P. Zhuravel, E.A. Korchak, S.A. Podoplekin, A. Sleptsov, V.S. Tomskiy. The responses conducted exploratory research were published twice in March 2016, on the website of the journal "Arctic and North".

Information-analytical magazine "Political education", the Chairman of the editorial board — S. E. Kadyrov published the announcement on the first page of the site "political education" in sections "column of the editorial staff" and "news" in an open vote of readers one of the eight issues under discussion: "How should be called the new law: the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation or to the Russian Arctic?". There were more than 1.3 thousand visits to published material and 90 responses were received from voting on the issue.

The results of the Study on contents of replies. essentially reflects the most significant discussion of researched content emphasizes problematique, allows us to understand ambiguous, I can even say — controversial, relevant scientific community to your development project the AZRF FZ on, identify various positions open voting on the website of the magazine "political education" (1 307 views, 90 replies) shows that more than half the voters were in favour of the name of the FZ "on Russian Arctic." below are the answers to all the questions raised.

**1. How do you personally feel, should any land area and water area of the northern seas be included in the Russian Arctic (land and sea) = Arctic zone of the Russian Federation in a broad understanding of it (not just land, as it is now)?**

- 1) It appears that the Russian Arctic perfectly justified must be included and continental shelf and water territory, including space from the Barents to the Chukchi Sea and to the North Pole, inclusive (LEV).
- 2) The composition of the AZRF should include land mainland territory, as well as the archipelagos and Islands in the Arctic Ocean and Bering Strait that belong to the RUSSIAN FEDERATION, internal and territorial water area of the northern seas, maritime spaces included in the exclusive economic zone of the Russian Federation (Konyshev V.N., Sergunin A.A.).
- 3) Murmansk oblast, Archangelsk completely (as the pivot point), severodvinsk (as reference point), Nenets Autonomous Okrug, Yamalo-Nenets AO, etc. along the coast of the Arctic Ocean (Korczak E.A.).
- 4) Land area: composition of the land territories defined by the Decree of the President of the RF in 2014, take into account all the wishes of bordering regions, in addition to Yakutia. When you see the pre-conditions and the political decision to change the boundaries of the AZRF believe it is possible to include in its structure: in Arkhangelsk Oblast: Kholmogorsky, Plesetsk, Pinega and Leshukonsky municipal districts; in the Republic of Karelia: municipalities on the coast of the White Sea; in Komi Republic: Ust-Tsilemsky district and urban districts "Inta" and "Usinsk; Yakutia: 8 municipalities of the Republic insists on. It also makes sense to consider the composition of the AZRF and Magadan Oblast of Kamchatka Krai. The water area of the AO seas: they are already included in its entirety. I consider it appropriate to add the Bering Sea (Podoplekin S.A.).
- 5) Arctic territories of the Russian Federation may vary, but it should be clear and comprehensible criteria, rather than lobbying as a basic principle. The need for an official Position should be enshrined in the law. As regards the areas that when ratifying the Convention on the law of the sea, we lost more than 1.5 million sq.km. Of course, they want to return, but this process will be lengthy and complicated (Selin V.S.).
- 6) I am a supporter of the sectoral principle defining the boundaries and responsibilities of 1926 year. It has not been canceled (Tomskiy V.S.)
- 7) In my opinion, you should address the utilitarian objective: highlight the Arctic space as the target macroeconomic and geopolitical military focus of the President and the Government of the Russian Federation. For such allocation meaningless search for artificial numerous criteria. Above all, economic, social, infrastructure, natural-environmental, etc. Firstly, this is not a criteria for Arctic territories. These are signs of the State of socio-economic systems and indicators of specificity of the territory, the knowledge of which is necessary for the implementation of investment projects and the selection of business activities. For example, indicates the dependence of economic activity and the sustenance of the population from the supply of fuel, food and other necessities from other regions of Russia. Kaluzhskaya oblast too depends not only from other regions of Russia, but also in other countries of the world. This is the base to include her in the Arctic zone of the RF! Secondly, it is not necessary to make the criterion of availability of compact residence of indigenous small-numbered peoples of the North, because the active commercial Arctic exploration and protection of geopolitical positions of the RF in the Arctic have long accompanied by displacement of the Russian people and other peoples of Russia. The presence of small people — it's just action premise for the design and implementation of the relevant municipality, in the AZRF, programme support and obtaining federal grants to optimize conditions for the development of small ethnic group. Thirdly, the Northern sea route is really an important transport artery, "pulls" the Arctic complexes. Consider it as economic and geographical criteria of territory

with the presence of its infrastructure to the AZRF possible. Unconditional allocation of territories of the AZRF helps only one base geographical criterion has long been known: conditional line Arctic circle. All territory (land and sea within the exclusive economic zone of the Russian Federation), located north of the Arctic Circle, without exception, can extend the legal category of "Arctic RUSSIA." But facilities of macroeconomic regulation economy Arctic regions in order to ensure the integrity of the inside and the interregional nature of economic systems ("anchor zones, transport and logistic centre) really be useful to include the territory of municipalities south of the Arctic Circle, irrespective of the ratio of the Arctic and a part of the territory to the South of this range (Zalyvskij N.P.).

8) Should include land area located north of the Arctic Circle line, as well as the intersection of the line of the territory of the Arctic Circle (66° 33'44.6" North latitude), as well as the area within the State border of the Russian Federation. In the municipalities should not share. They should include in their entirety. In these areas should be midnight sun and polar night, Tundra, ice on the sea for a long time but not less than six months (Zhuravel V.P.).

9) It is not necessary to hold a discussion on issues decided by the relevant decree of the President of the Russian Federation (Toulokhonov A.C.).

10) The composition of Arctic Russia should include land territory of the Murmansk region, the Northern Arkhangelsk region and Komi Republic; Nenets AO; Yamalo-nenets AO; Dolgano-nenetsky AO Norilsk and the Turukhansk district of Krasnoyarsk Krai; Uluses of the Sakha Republic (Yakutia) having access to the water area; Chukotka Autonomous Okrug; islands; the water area of the northern seas from the Barents to the Chukchi; space marine included in the exclusive economic zone of the Russian Federation; as well as the territory of the extended continental shelf according to the partially revised submission of the Russian Federation to the Commission on the limits of the continental shelf in regard to the continental shelf of the Russian Federation in the Arctic Ocean "(VNII Okeangeologii, S.I. Ivanova).

11) Russia has extensive negative experience of cutting administrative territories. Believe in the AZRF you must include everything that is not contrary to international laws and conventions. This will help eliminate further examples of "brotherly" Division with Norway disputed maritime territories. Then will that protect benefit and opportunity (Ulyanovsk V.I.).

12) Land territory of the Murmansk and Arkhangelsk oblasts, the Republic of Karelia and Komi Republic (Vorkuta), NAO, YANAO, Taimyr Yamalo-Nenets AO, Norilsk and district of Krasnoyarsk Krai, ulus of the Sakha Republic (Yakutia), Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, have access to the water area, and the Barents, white, Kara, Laptev, East Siberian, Chukchi and Bering seas; Islands in SLO (Lukin Y.F.).

13) Land territory of the Murmansk and Arkhangelsk oblasts, the Republic of Karelia and Komi Republic (Vorkuta), NAO, YANAO, Taimyr Yamalo-Nenets area, Norilsk and Turukhansk area of Krasnoyarsk Krai, Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, as well as the 13 regions of the Republic of Sakha (Yakutia), bordering the Arctic Ocean water area (hereinafter referred to as AO) and located north of the Arctic Circle (66° 33 'n), taking into account the integrity of the natural economic territorial complexes (strongholds); link regional transport system in the North Sea and Barents , White, Kara, Laptev, East Siberian, Chukchi and Bering seas; Islands in AO (Sleptsov A.N.).

## **2. How should the new law be called: the law on the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation or on the Russian Arctic?**

17 replies received from experts:

- On the Russian Arctic — 6 pers.
- About the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation — 5 pers.

- The AZRF is more precise, but the Russian Arctic is a very beautiful name — 1 pers.
- Arctic territory of Russia or Russian Arctic territories — 1 person.
- The name "Arctic zone of the Russian Federation and the Russian Arctic" should be equivalent to — 1 pers.
- Russian Arctic sector — 1 pers.
- It is not so fundamental — 2 pers.

The quantitative results of the interactive voting on the webpage of the journal "Political Education" to the question "how should the new law be called: the law on the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation or on the Russian Arctic?" as follows:

- a. On the Russian Arctic — 52.2% (47 votes).
- b. About the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation — 27.8% (25 votes).
- c. The names "Arctic zone of the Russian Federation and the Russian Arctic" should be equivalent to — 20% (18 votes).

1) The name of the Federal law "on the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation" is more politically correct, although the name "on the Russian Arctic" would be, without a doubt, a very beautiful. In such a title clearly hear quiet confidence powers that she was right for several centuries is a leading Arctic State peace and because all this time studied and mastered the Arctic expanses of land adjacent to the part of our country (LEV).

2) "On the Russian Arctic. With zones we have associated the most negative memories about GULAG. Arctic — not zone! 2.5 million people live there (Lukin Y.F.).

3) About rigor and consistency in terminology, it was necessary to think from the very beginning. As adopted the term "AZRF" and he found reflected in many doctrinal documents, it is not necessary to refuse from it, otherwise confusion. Pluses of the term "AZRF" is that it stresses that this part of the Arctic that historically and in contemporary law developed Russia. The term "Russian Arctic" would be more applicable if Russia by signing the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea 1982, has not renounced its interpretation of the sectoral Division of the Arctic, according to the Decree of the Central Executive Committee of the USSR from 1926 exactly enters Canada, which is a signatory to the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea 1982, and waives the sectoral principle (Konyshov V.N., Sergunin A.A.).

4) The new law should be called: "on the Russian Arctic" (Korczak E.A.).

5) It is unimportant. Name of space object control in accordance with state documents and strategy — Arctic zone of the Russian Federation "(Podoplekin S.A.).

6) Because the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation now well-established legal concept ("fundamentals of State policy in the AZRF for the period till the year 2020 and beyond", "AZRF development strategy and national security ...."), then it is advisable to save now. With regard to historical associations, even the word "party", "Union", "security", "folk" can bring on negativity. It will take place. You can still add "on the development of the Arctic." (Selin V.S.).

7) You want to abandon the term "zone", because it does not correspond to the situation of the RF in principle, 70% of the country's North and is not such a burden no country in the world. The framework law will give nothing, even if it is the most perfect and called perfect. We have framework laws don't work, that retrieved practice for many centuries. A tight

package of federal laws and regulations for the Executive harmonized and interconnected activities — political, economic, military, social, cultural and humanitarian. Everything else will be profane and violent activities of the imitation of the last 20 years (the Tomskiy V.S.).

8) The term "Arctic zone of the Russian Federation" in a legal context more favourable than the Russian Arctic, not least because the exclusive economic zone is not 100% object of the sovereignty of the Russian Federation (Zalyvskij N.P.).

9) Best to the Russian Arctic. "but it is necessary to observe all legal formal. The term" Russian Arctic "will reflect our traditions, as well as the fact that we've had a few centuries to assimilate and develop the Arctic "Zone" really synonymous, especially in the northern parts of the country with coercion and punishment. And the Arctic is our blessing, a potential Foundation for our economic growth, and that means freedom (Zhuravel V.P.).

10) It is advisable to call it "on the development of the Russian Arctic" (Toulokhonov A.C.).

11) The name of the Federal law "on Arctic Russian Federation should be considered correct, since the notion of" Arctic Russia is reflected in many legal doctrines (VNII Okeangeologîâ, S.I. Ivanova).

12) What's the problem? "The Name of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation" contains the status of the State law. "On the Russian Arctic" is closer to the tourist brand (Ulyanovskiy V.I.).

13) "On the Russian Arctic. Russia has a special historical responsibility for the sustainable development of the Arctic, as has the biggest Arctic territory, in which the lives of more than 2.5 million people (Sleptsov A.N.).

14) Probably, the name "Arctic zone of the Russian Federation and the Russian Arctic" should be equivalent: How, for example, in accordance with article 1 of the Constitution tantamount to name Russia and the Russian Federation (Kadyrov S.).

15) I do not have the right to vote, because it is not a Russian citizen, but the view will. If there is no clear, unambiguous guidance on the allegiances and, in the future it will create conditions for separatism. Yes, do not laugh. Separatism is possible. The Arctic resources will recoup any investment of foreign partners in the secession from Russia.

16) In my opinion, the most appropriate name suitable Russian Arctic sector, i.e., the area enclosed between the two radii and an arc (Grigorov).

**3. Does it make sense to organize a referendum among the people of the northern areas of the country. Not long ago it was done so about the change of names introduced in the Soviet era (1989). "Arctic zone of the Russian Federation" historically is more acceptable name for the Russian Arctic. Is it logical to keep the historical continuity of the Russian Empire with a modern, democratic Russia of XXI century ?**

1) If I'd read all the questions in advance, perhaps otherwise would respond on a second and still go sequentially. I personally think such a question (to replace the title on "more acceptable") make the referendum invalid, at least until it was wide public discussion on a variety of levels: ranging from discussions in the media, scientific debates at conferences (the results of which shall be communicated to the citizens) before the public discussion of the Deputy's body (LEV).

2) It makes no sense to spend quite a costly referendum when and so means mastering the Arctic lacks. Hardly indigenous populations or fisheries petrochemical complex will seem crucial title region. For them is more important than the specific social programs. And historical continuity must be ensured, especially in State policy — then and will not modify titles. The issue of the title could be resolved without a referendum and the waste of resources (Konyshev V.N. Sergunin, A.A.).

- 3) No, everything can be solved by the adoption of the law with the appropriately titled "on the Russian Arctic (Korczak E.A.)
- 4) Does not have, is unimportant and it could not be the subject of a referendum. "Name the Russian Arctic" is artificial, like the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation. "Following the logic of the State would find it useful to consider the education of the Federal District. The Arctic as this requires a revision of the administrative-territorial system in at least five subjects of the Russian Federation, it is a very distant prospect (Podoplekin S.A.).
- 5) Think that doesn't make sense. Is very expensive, but since it does not affect any material interests of the population of the Russian Arctic, a high turnout will not be possible to provide for the election of now - it goes 20% of voters (Selin V.S.).
- 6) The referendum is a good thing but we have this little gives. People will remain silent, like a century ago because of fatigue, a lack of faith in the authorities' actions, the deepest depression most of wide layers of the society. This dangerous, disastrous trend should gradually overcome the specific actual action authority to improve manageability in the country. When a certain level of confidence can be and to hold a referendum and his decisions is mandatory (Tomskiy V.S.).
- 7) I think there is no State in this matter should receive fair and common sense (Zhuravel V.P.).
- 8) Makes no sense (Toulokhonov A.C.).
- 9) It makes no sense for such a costly event, because it in no way affects the important interests of the population of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation (VNII Okeangeologii, S.I. Ivanova).
- 10) I do not think that the referendum will be very important for the people of the Arctic territories. And imperial ambitions we have enough (Ulyanovskiy V.I.).
- 11) Yes, Russian citizens have is no longer asked their opinions through referendums. Referendum in Crimea - is a separate song and to the conduct of sociological issues and their interpretation of an ambiguous relationship. The referendum is certainly expensive, but no more expensive than Russian citizens trust in the authorities and administration at the Federal and regional levels (Lukin Y.F.).
- 12) Rather no. in our view, the most appropriate solution to this problem is a scientific sociological study (survey) the views of the people AZRF on the subject (Sleptsov A.N.).

#### **4. Why do entities of the RF and municipal entities need a new law on the Russian Arctic = AZRF? Expectations and concerns, opportunities, and threats?**

- 1) Of course, first and foremost it should be on the protection of our natural resources in the Arctic. From whom? It's no secret the successful practice of the "creeping expansion" on Svalbard Norway NATO bloc party is not secret and the activities of the Finnish public organization "Pro Karelia", which openly calls for the transfer of a part of Finland Russian territories (LEV).
- 2) AZRF Act need not only actors and municipalities in this region, but also for the country as a whole. the new FZ must clarify territorial, legal and social status of AZRF, as well as to clarify the mechanism of management of all spheres of life in the Arctic. This applies in particular to the distribution of powers between the Federal Centre, on the one hand, and the subjects of the Russian Federation and municipal entities; private-public partnership in economy; accountability mechanisms of the Russian and foreign companies for social issues and environmental conservation; policy on small indigenous peoples; benefits for all northerners. In AZRF, the State cannot wash its hands under the pretext of "market" mentality, it must retain initiative and control in managing all spheres of life. At the same time, you must find the

best balance of power and resources that enable RF entities and municipalities to exercise reasonable initiative and autonomy in public policy (Konyshev V.N., Sergunin A.A.).

3) The law need to strengthen State support for the development of areas with harsh climatic conditions taking into account an adequate assessment of the human cost in this zone (KorczaK E.A.).

4) The AZRF Act is only needed if it will include the introduction of special regimes in the field of environmental management, spatial planning, taxation, tariffs, environmental protection, State subsidies (Podoplekin S.A.).

5) It is difficult to speak about the final concept and design of the new law. Likely, it will be a "framework", however, and as such, it would be useful, as it creates legal prerequisites for changes in other laws and regulations of direct action (Selin V.S.).

6) In its current form the Bill virtually duplicates the existing Russian legislation. The Bill does not therefore will bring significant changes in the lives of actors and municipalities. But there are some fundamental innovations, among which the abandonment of the constituent entities of the RF taxes and fees for the right to use natural resources (including TAX) that would significantly affect the inter-budgetary relations, because the TAX makes a significant contribution to the profitable part of the federal budget (Chuprov).

7) Framework law will do nothing to the subjects and municipalities. As well as the Federal Center, in addition to the new routes for the transfer of resources by corrupt schemes (Tomskiy V.S.).

8) I have long thought and concluded that such a law is not needed. It cannot regulate relations, because social relationships already regulated by other laws of the Russian Federation and many Arctic boundary can be docked by sub-decree (Shraga M.H.).

9) Through Executive on Arctic issues done. But they reflect policy issues. The status, competence of constituent entities of the Russian Federation, municipalities are not reflected there. With the adoption of a special law on the Arctic, pinning the special status of the macro-region, it will be possible to rectify this situation and argued that Russia has fully and legislative framework governing the relations in this region of the country. This task will not be easy. Currently on the Arctic in total, there are more than 500 different normative legal acts of the time. All of this should be "clear away", keep everything positive that has proven its necessity and usefulness (Zhuravel V.P.).

10) From my point of view for the local population requires federal support in solving their problems. it totally does not matter in what form it will be implemented (Toulokhonov A.C.).

11) A specific law that will allow its adoption work directly in the promotion of those or other tasks to develop the Arctic. The law must take into account the economic stimulus measures of Arctic territory, social development, measures related to vital activity of the smallnumbered peoples of the North, measures to protect the environment and natural resources in the Arctic. Settlement of the distribution of powers between the Federal Centre and regional and municipal entities (VNII Okeangeologii, S.I. Ivanova).

12) The new law is needed in principle if it reflected the interests and needs of the people living in those territories of the indigenous and old-timer population and not just the interests of oligarchs and oil-and-gas sector. Now the indigenous population feels starožil'českoe and guests in their native land (Ulyanovskiy V.I.).

13) Entities and municipalities are waiting for AZRF preferences for business benefits to the population, solve accumulated problems solidified legitimately at the federal law, these expectations may not be justified (Lukin Y.F.).

14) We believe that the law is needed, first and foremost, for the legal regulation of public relations, Government, business and citizens on the issue of the exploitation of natural resources and the quality of life of the people of the Arctic (Sleptsov A.N.).

**5. What should be the content and framework of the new projected FZ? What are the key provisions in your opinion, is it necessary to include in the new framework a law on the Russian Arctic = AZRF? What should not we forget?**

1) Koli is a "framework law", probably, he should establish the basic principles for the sustainable development of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation (LEV).

2) Key provisions of the law: territorial, legal and social status of AZRF; public policy objectives in AZRF; assessment of external and internal threats to development AZRF; priorities appropriate cultural, educational, socio-economic, environmental and military policies of the state in AZRF; mechanisms for planning, financing and governance in AZRF; providing comprehensive scientific examination of public policy in the AZRF and decision-making; the distribution of powers between State and local governments; principles of interaction of local and State Governments; co-management mechanisms at the local level, with the participation of indigenous peoples; general legal and economic status of the Northern sea route, the conditions for international cooperation for its use (taking into account the entry into force of the polar code since January 1, 2017); accountability mechanisms all businesses for environmental protection; the conditions, principles and mechanisms for international cooperation in AZRF; control over the activities of foreign companies in AZRF; organization of Russian and international insurance funds to ensure safe economic activity in AZRF (Konyshev V.N., Sergunin A.A.).

3) One of the key provisions of the regulation should be the issues related to the functioning of the system of remuneration of persons working in enterprises, organizations and institutions located in the territories of AZRF (district of interest surcharges, additional annual leave travel to the place of holiday and back to the employee and members of his family, including the extension of the State guarantees and compensations, such as providing compensation for a worker and his/her family with comfortable accommodation in the workplace; providing guarantees of free shelters young professionals social services (Korchak E.A.).

4) AZRF Act should be a source of law giving federal legislation providing for special regimes in the field of environmental management, taxation, spatial planning, environmental protection, tariff policy, Government subsidies, supervision, small and medium-sized businesses. The adoption of the law on AZRF must be accompanied by the lifting of legislative acts against indigenous peoples of the North and the rejection of the use of the term, replacing it in principle to the concept of "indigenous people" (Podoplekin S.A.).

5) Four years ago, an attempt was made to the preparation of the Federal law "on the development of the regions of Siberia and far east of the Russian Federation", it was not successful. However, in December, 2014. As a result of these works was released on the territories ahead of socio-economic development in the Russian Federation. "So, as already noted, the job will be difficult. Most importantly, in my opinion, lay the stabilization mechanism and development based on the transfer parts of depletable natural resources in the Arctic as their production in order to ensure the subsequent financial employment or moving the resident's appropriate settlements. It has been known world theory and practice — trust funds created in Arctic provinces of Canada and Alaska (Selin V.S.).

6) In the part of the regulation on the issue of environmental protection, the Bill could enable/duplicate existing legislation with a view to: 1) unambiguous interpretation of the rules by which existing legislation is ambiguous interpretation, for example: to make a definite ban on the movement of heavy equipment on the tundra in the snowless period off the roads. A number of regional legislation contains a similar rule, but it often does not work. In the area of Dudinka cross-country trails are expanding every year, and they are so broad that

can be locked from space (visible on low resolution images). While the draft FZ on Arctic zone introduced a rule that allows the use of heavy machinery in the snowless period in the tundra in "inside tracks". In this regard, the federal rule should contain a clear rule banning the use of heavy equipment outside dirt roads or paved roads. Enter a definite ban on the use of single-hull tankers for transporting any oil and petroleum products in the EEZ, territorial waters, inland waters. At present, the Russian Federation joined the ban on single-hull tankers, in accordance with the rules of MARPOL 73/78. However, these regulations contain a lot of exceptions that allow for the use of single-hull tankers. 2) to make new rules to change towards strengthening of existing environmental legislation, such as: to strengthen article of the administrative code and the CRIMINAL CODE, dealing with issues of concealing or distorting information on environmental violations in the Arctic, as well as introduce step-up factors for calculating the environmental harm in the Arctic zone. Fix that for the maritime part of the Arctic area of SPNT must reach at least 40% of the water areas of the Arctic seas with the prohibition, including the production of oil and condensate, as well as industrial fisheries, and to ground part of not less than 30% of the ground part of the Arctic including ban on fossil fuel extraction (Chuprov).

7) The framework law should not be! Need action power with real results understandable to people (Tomskiy V.S.).

8) Indeed, everything in law does not turn on. Life and practice are richer. Most importantly, therefore it is necessary to prescribe. For example, territorial affiliation in the Russian Arctic, the geopolitical importance of the Arctic, the cultural and historical traditions. The preparation of the law must be borne in mind that the Arctic will have a major impact not only on the climate and ecology, but also sets new principles of relationships between States within the framework of the global changes in the world economic and political balance of forces (Zhuravel V.P.).

9) The main issue is, in accordance with the Constitution of the Russian Federation, the question of land ownership and natural resources should be clearly specified private property, the property of indigenous peoples and the property of the constituent entities of the Russian Federation (Toulokhonov A.C.).

10) The law should reflect the principal areas of State policy in the field of development of the RUSSIAN Arctic. The law should provide for the specifics of the economic, social, environmental, investment, demographic, migration, housing policy, including measures on State support for economic activities on the basis of particular budgetary, tax, customs and tariff regulations. implement the features of the distribution of powers between federal and local authorities (VNII Okeangeologii, S.I. Ivanova).

11) The new law still have to give a principled answer about prospects of the Arctic: based on the "development" or "evidence" the territories. How to save the departing population Northern Territories? (Ulyanovskiy V.I.).

12) It is not necessary to include in the Act. Specific issues of socio-economic development, preferences and incentives in support of indigenous peoples of the North and others, can and should find its solution in other legislation. It is very important in the framework of the Russian Arctic FZ determine its borders, the General principles of the vital activity of all spheres of society, the principles of the green economy, the geopolitical significance, cultural and historical traditions (Lukin Y.F.).

13) Firstly, it must be the backbone legal act and this should be reflected in the title is the Federal Act on the Russian Arctic. Secondly, in terms of legal regulation of the development of the Arctic territories, legislation must be comprehensive. Thirdly, persons residing in the Arctic, in our view, should receive a portion of the proceeds from the extraction of natural resources (Sleptsov A.N.).

**6. Do we need to include preferences for business and benefits to the population in the law on AZRF? These matters should be governed by other legislative acts of Russia's far North, since all land territory of AZRF today are part of the actors of the far north of the country and legislation from 1932 onwards, which is continually being updated.**

1) It seems to me (again) that a framework law shall establish the basic principles for the sustainable development of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation. There is no doubt that to secure the population here and develop the economy, people should receive social benefits, business — will receive preferences. "However, overload" framework law specifics that you want to install from a specific period of time (and then either renew these benefits, or change the order of their submission). The solution of such issues should be governed by other acts (LEV).

2) AZRF Act must enshrine binding principles on the benefits to the population and businesses, and others (by-laws) Regulations — govern the parameters and conditions of benefits (Konyshov V.N., Sergunin A.A.).

3) Not true, legislation (extreme north) is not updated. 1993 Russian law "on State guarantees for persons working and living in the far North and similar areas» # 4520-sterilized 1. approximately half of the rules does not apply. The procedure for establishing, updating and revising the district coefficients of payments and allowances staževym is still not defined part natural rents should be directed to human development of the Russian Arctic otherwise this area will remain outside the zone of control on the part of the Russian State "(Korczak E.A.).

4) Not all of the territory of AZRF coincide with the territories of the far North Act, this legislation regulating different fields of social relations. L'gotirovanie within the framework of the far North has fundamentally different rationale than questions AZRF. Think it inappropriate to link between the AZRF Act and regulations in relation to the far North (Podoplekin S.A.).

5) As with the positions of legal regulation (Arctic territories operate hundreds of regulations on northern regions) and economic (Arctic territory "embedded" in the Russian North, in many constituent entities of the Russian Federation, they are an extension of each other), it is better to prepare a draft law "on the State policy in the North of the Russian Federation and in the Arctic territories". Cancelled in year 2004 No. 78-FZ "on the bases of State regulation of the socio-economic development in the North of the Russian Federation can revive (it was coordinated with all Northern subjects of the Russian Federation) and to adapt to the new situation , including the inclusion of specific provisions on the Arctic "(Selin V.S.).

6) Legislation on benefits for businesses, primarily for oil and gas companies already exists in the form of a periodically updated amendments to the tax code. As currently drafted, the draft federal law on the Arctic zone declared priority benefits for companies engaged in the extraction of hydrocarbon resources. This means that the actual act of delaw would formalize and/or expand the practice of granting new concessions for oil and gas in the new territories. This is contrary to the national strategic-Kim in the interest of the country that are associated with a gradual withdrawal from the oil and gas economy and finding alternative more environmentally friendly solutions to the problem of falling oil production, including through investment in energy technology, developed renewable energy, improved oil recovery factor and so on (Chuprov).

7) 6-7 are the same questions. For the population must be guaranteed an intuitive set of standard life wealth in the North in the form of housing, health, transport and education services, food and daily activities. These standards should significantly exceed the relevant norms for the "nesevernnyh" only territories under such conditions, it will be possible to stop the outflow of people from the North. pro business talk hard. It in Russia has no need to

strongly refuse the "market" principles of the development of the North. Declare it and run complex government programs on reanimation infrastructure Northern Territories in the mode mobilization of the economy. All other schemes - money or worse (Tomskiy V.S.).

8) No, it is not necessary. Taking into account the development of the Arctic, big ambitious projects that will be implemented on its territory, like "Yamal LNG can be relevant directives and regulations of the Government of the RUSSIAN FEDERATION to prescribe additional preferences and privileges to people who will carry out this work. I think the Arctic will develop clusters. We do not stretch. We must clearly articulate the principles and limits of possible participation in the exploration and development of the Russian Arctic foreign States. Should be "red lines" that cannot be re-walk that will undermine our national interests and to the detriment of security. As the analysis shows, targeting sanctions demonstrates a real rivalry between the States in the region to develop its resources. In our view, the United States and European countries are not interested in strengthening the position of our country in the Arctic region. They lead and manage this policy, even if their company will incur losses and withdraw from the lucrative Arctic projects in Russia. In these circumstances, it is important to create their own competitive technologies to reduce dependence on other countries in the future in the development of the Arctic (Zhuravel V.P.).

9) The solution to all the issues raised can be resolved to absolute analogy with the laws of Alaska, the Canadian North and Greenland and, inter alia, with the establishment of a Fund for future generations (Toulokhonov A.C.).

10) In order to implement public investment policy in Arctic RUSSIA requires State support of enterprises carrying out activities in the area of hydrocarbon resources and minerals; the creation of favourable conditions for investment activity development; encouraging new projects economic development of Arctic territories through co-financing; to establish procedures to implement the system of incentives to stimulate the development priorities of the Arctic; the provision of additional guarantees and compensations for persons living and working in Arctic Russia (VNII Okeangeologii, S.I. Ivanova).

11) The question of benefits and preferences not quite correct, incentives can be given, but you can cancel. the question should stand on indigenous rights, particularly the rights to land, water, forests, etc. To the indigenous population not vyprašivalo coastal fishing quotas Moscow officials that the law provided a decent living conditions of the population, and easier conditions of survival under conditions of legal and economic limitations (Ulyanovskiy V.I.).

12) No, there is no need. The notion of "far North", laws governing benefits for the population and business here, Northern delivery etc. If we refuse this array of legislation and include all the issues in the new federal law on AZRF, then what will we do with the old system of legislation on "servers", the practice of enforcement? (Lukin Y.F.)

13) Yes, in our view, is not only necessary, but also vital to clearly determine State policy in respect of business (preferences) and people living in the Arctic (revenues from the extraction of natural resources). With the adoption of a new legal instrument concerning the Arctic should ensure that an inventory of the Soviet system, legislation on "servers" (Sleptsov A.N.).

**7. Should the state expand the boundaries of the Russian Arctic, leaving gradually from the term "Far North of Russia"? Do we need to modify existing legislation on the Far North of Russia? Is there any sense in modernization of the existing provisions on business preferences and entitlements for the population of the Northern territories of the country?**

1) If the country seeks to develop "the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation", then obviously it is and should be referred to this region and in other legal instruments. However, as I detail in the legislation on the far north of Russia have not studied, with the answer to the ques-

tion, what changes are needed, and it is difficult to State anything wrong because I consider unspecified question really is extremely important for the Russian Federation "(LEV).

2) The concept of the far North is too vague in the geographical and legal contexts in legislation requiring precise terms and definitions, it is better not to use such fuzzy concepts. If agreement on the use of the term AZRF, in legal documents better only eat it in order to avoid ambiguities and nečĕtkostej in the interpretation of these documents at the same time, in the political and academic notion of lexicons "Far North" can be saved as greater-than AZRF. The latter can be considered as a special part of the far North, which the State connects the strategic objective on the resource for the development of the economy for the foreseeable future (Konyshev V.N., Sergunin A.A.).

3) Borders expand while it is not necessary, but we must offer mechanisms for possible revision. Modernization of existing regulations on preferences is only necessary from the standpoint of their extensions. Removal or reduction of existing guarantees and benefits for Russian Arctic territory should not be considered in any options The (Korczak E.a.).

4) No, until clear and comprehensible criteria (see para. 1), expand the boundaries of pointless. Go away from the term "Far North" and "North" is not necessary, and even dangerous, because it will collapse the current organizational-economic model. And here is to integrate the Arctic Act legislation on the Servers you want, and useful "(Selin V.S.).

5) No need to expand Arctic borders, I would say the Arctic expanses. They are boundless. These boundaries should be included the area where people live and work, and in the Arctic, not so much. It is necessary to determine the provisions regarding the Arctic tourism. We have no. For example, Iceland survives due to Arctic tourism-Ma. Over the past 10 years, the number of foreign tourists increased by 2.5 times. The number of tourists arriving by sea on cruise ships, rose from 57 thousand in 2003 to 227 thousand people in 2013, the proportion of foreign currency proceeds. The tourism industry in the total volume of currency export earnings amounted to 27% in 2013, in the same time, the contribution of the tourism industry in the country's GDP rose from 4% to 15%. Recently, emphasis on eco-tourism and trips to habitats of whales. Unfortunately, our tour operators focus on outbound tourism. This situation should be changed (Zhuravel V.P.).

6) A more detailed discussion of these issues are outlined in my monograph "the political geography of Northern Asia» Ulan-Ude, 2014. (Toulokhonov A.C.).

7) Rams VNIIOkeangeologijâ them. I.s. Gramberga, "within the framework of its activities and is the lead organization in the preparation of a submission to the UN Commission on the limits of the continental shelf on the extension of the continental shelf of the Russian Federation (VNII Okeangeologii, S.I. Ivanova).

8) The question of the Russian Arctic and far North has a purely geographical content. For geographical changes must follow and we want economic for the expansion of the Russian Arctic the entire population by one district factor 2.0? !! But where is the money? (Ulyanovskiy V.I.).

9) You can make a hypothesis about changing the composition of the far North, as in AZRF included more northern territories. Then undo all the perks of the extreme north, it gets expensive in a crisis for the budget and establish a preferential regime for only AZRF. However, in the current crisis situation, DG before elections and then President of the Russian Federation, it will be more like an act of political Hara-Kiri. Can this issue is updated in the future? Not today (Lukin Y.F.).

10) When deciding on the matter, it would be appropriate to take as a basis for evidence-based criteria to the Arctic territories. Taking into account the new challenges, prospects and trends of development of international law, the Arctic countries, as well as the forthcoming changes in the legislation of Russia in the sphere of legislative support for the development

of the Arctic, domestic legal science needs to develop the concept of a new branch of law - "Arctic right." (Sleptsov A.N.).

#### **8. Other your thoughts, suggestions and comments about the Russian Arctic = AZRF.**

1) The law must represent a reasonable combination of the General regulations of the socio-economic, political and other processes in the AZRF with specificity in order to serve a long time, but at the same time meant the possibility of flexible correction. "click" on the drafting of AML/CFT LAW on AZRF you must include specialists in various fields not only lawyers, but also economists, sociologists, demographers, political scientists, anthropologists, ecologists, culturologists, war; not only the "Muscovites" — representatives of the Federal Center but also representatives of the regions and the indigenous peoples of the North. Should not be *kelejnosti* in the procedure of adoption of the law. Project of federal law must be published in the print and electronic media and public discussion, at least for a few months (Konyshev V.N., Sergunin A.A., St. Petersburg State University).

2) First, mandatory and necessary step to create telecommunications and information infrastructure in the North and adjoining territories to new technologies without solving this problem all the others could not be resolved, including Orange and defense projects. Program in this direction are available. Should update them and run them as a priority. The second step — General cleaning ports and surrounding areas without these tasks does not make sense to discuss all other. Interest in the problems of the Arctic, Antarctica, and Northern Territories is constantly growing for quite objective reasons here focused all the problems of survival and sustainable development, finding scientific justification the conditions of preservation of life on planet Earth with spectrum issues an unusually wide and deep for format and content. It is difficult to isolate the main topic among a host of issues, from the conservation and development of the cultures of indigenous Northern peoples to philosophical and cosmological phenomena of the Arctic's role in the fate of humanity, from the technological conditions of the physical arrangement of the everyday problems of man in Arctic conditions to solve the most complicated, painful issues of military confrontation, which no one is excluded from the agenda of the countries of the world community (the Tomskiy V.S.).

3) I would like to draw attention to the problem of abandoned flooded objects, especially radioactive objects. In Arctic waters of the USSR/Russia them was sunk approximately 18 thousand. In their publications I constantly emphasise that Russia needs to take and publicly present the world community integrated programme on clearing AKBatorii from radioactive waste, thus eliminate the soil for speculation and attacks at the failure by Russia to ensure environmental security in the Arctic. In contemporary political conditions the West uses systematically the environmental problems caused by the mistakes of the past and some bugs today, as a pretext for creating reputational problems for Russia. In particular, it may be directed against an application and by extension of the continental shelf of the RF. I should like to announce that the project and the concept of law we discussed at the meeting of the Scientific Council of the Institute of Europe, Russian Academy of Sciences. Debate has been held, were considering the Arctic policies and strategies of the countries of the Arctic Council (Zhuravel V.P.).

4) Russia's natural resources and economic potential of the Arctic plays a crucial role in the development of the national economy and sustainable development of the regions of the Russian Federation, located in this area. So, need such a law, which will provide a normative, legal and institutional environment for long-term sustainable development of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation, subject to the preservation of natural ecosystems, natural landscapes and biodiversity. (VNII Okeangeologii, S.I. Ivanova).

- 5) Any policy decisions have economic price. Given the existing economic's liberty, a colleague at the income levels and poverty crisis wages for the majority of the population, any development strategy without political will will not run (Ulyanovskiy V.I.).
- 6) I would like to take the long-awaited law on the Russian Arctic = AZRF not behind closed doors, and on the basis of a broad public debate (Lukin Y.F.).
- 7) It is time to move from words to deeds! (Sleptsov A.N.).
- 8) In my opinion, the title that most closely reflects the concept under discussion could be considered "Arctic territory of Russia" or "Russian Arctic territories and their using in legislative practice. In the period of active industrial development of the Russian Arctic in the first place must be provided for the establishment of an effective legislative framework of its exploration and development, and of course, the adoption of the Basic Act. it should be noted the problems in legislative ensuring the Arctic regions, which is still at the formative stage requires considerable efforts, including in the work of the legal officer of the vital activity of the smallnumbered peoples of the North (S. N. Kharyuchi).

### *Summary conclusions, suggestions*

1. It is required a clarification questions on the composition of the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation -Russian Arctic taking into account national interests of Russia in the Arctic, geopolitics, science-based, interdisciplinary criteria, the water area of the northern seas.
2. The referendum on the studied subject, as expected, did not receive the support of the experts interviewed and seemed unnecessary and costly. The more important an analytical survey of the problems that emerged in public opinion zondaže 18 February-March 11, 2016
3. It is proposed to name the new federal law on Russian Arctic ". The main importance used the word "zone" is a purely geographical priority natural features of the Arctic. The thing is, however, that the Arctic— is not only a "clean" geography with its natural zones, without diminishing its significance, but whit and cium, culture, economy, geopolitics, history, finally. In the Russian Arctic living's 2.5 million people.A part of them will inevitably arise Association, unfortunately its not only geography but also with Solovkami, Noril'sklagom and other similar "zones" of our historical past. Mention in the Federal law more about Ka-coy "zone", albeit with good geographic intentions, is to pull in the past rather than the future. This is not the refusal from the concept of zone in geography, and about the meaning of the national interests of Russia in the Arctic, which are the expression of the needs of the State, society, people. Key FZ on Russian Arctic should not zacikli be based on the monopoly of one narrow geographical approach and be based on the interdisciplinary approach to the ciplinarnom precisely calibrated terms of law. "It's better to Russian Arctic". But it is necessary to observe all legal formalities. The term "Russian Arctic" will reflect our traditions, as well as the fact that we've had a few centuries to assimilate and develop the Arctic. "Zone" really synonymous, especially in the northern parts of the country with coercion and punishment. And the Arctic is our blessing, a potential Foundation for our economic growth, and thus freedom» (Zhuravel V.P.).
4. Need a clear understanding of the Mission of the main federal law on Russian Arctic ", its scope, legal criteria, fiscal and investment possibilities of the State, regions, municipalities, business. In this regard, there is a need for careful analysis and accounting all made specific comments and suggestions on the draft.
5. Key provisions of the new AML/CFT LAW be discussed more widely, both in the MEDIA and in the subjects, the municipalities of AZRF, not just behind closed doors at the level of administration, Governors, their advisers, in a narrow circle. "The draft AML/CFT LAW must be published in the print and electronic media and public discussion, at least for a few months (Konyshhev V.N., Sergunin A. A., St. Petersburg State University).

6. One of the most debatable issues remains the problem of possible preferences for business and benefits to the population. On the one hand, today's crisis simply does not have the necessary resources in order to take into account all reasonable offers and take a really exhaustive provisions for fastening of the population, including youth, in the Arctic, to support indigenous peoples and old-timer population here to accumulate human capital; to optimize the cost of production in the Arctic region, taking into account the further transition on the principles of the green economy, the balance of economy and ecology. On the other hand, in practice enforcement is already effective as of 30-ies. XX. The far North legislation regulating these issues. It was felt that for the general population it is necessary to guarantee an intuitive set of standard life wealth in the North in the form of housing, health, transport and education services, food.

7. To decide on expanding the borders of the Russian Arctic requires not only taking into account land territories of AZRF, but also the waters of the seas of the Arctic Ocean. Exhaustive grounds for defining the boundaries of the Arctic are several interrelated approaches: 1) Arctic Circle — 66° 33'44.6" North latitude. 2) Differentiation of landscapes, zoning, Tundra, forest-tundra, taiga. 3) July Isotherm + 100; criteria for Nordenskjold, Visa, the magnitude of the radiation balance, conditions of vegetative period. 4) Discomfort of human activity at high latitudes: health, harsh natural conditions (low temperatures, snow, Frost, polar night, wind, humidity). 5) Internal territorial-administrative boundaries of regions, municipalities of Arctic States. 6) ethnic and cultural landscape, indigenous rights, cultural and historical traditions. 7) Thalassocracy, an outlet to the sea in the Arctic States SLO any part of its land. 8) rise in labour costs, costs of production, the depreciation of fixed assets. 9) quality of life, social cohesion, human capital accumulation and use.

8. Key, critical issues, you must select:

8.1. Firstly, it should be a backbone legal act and this should be reflected in the title is the Federal Act on the Russian Arctic. Secondly, in terms of legal regulation of the development of the Arctic territories, legislation must be comprehensive. Thirdly, persons residing in the Arctic, in our view, should receive a portion of the proceeds from the extraction of natural resources (Sleptsov A.N.).

8.2. Cancellation or reducing existing guarantees and benefits for Russian Arctic territory should not be considered in any versions of the (Korczak Ea);

8.3. It should be noted the problems in legislative ensuring the Arctic regions, which is still at the formative stage, requires considerable effort, including work on legal support of vital activity of the smallnumbered indigenous peoples of the North (S. Kharyuchi);

8.4. A specific law that would allow when it was adopted to work directly in the promotion of those or other problems on the development of the Arctic. The law must take into account the economic stimulus measures of Arctic territory, social development, measures related to vital activity of the smallnumbered peoples of the North, measures to protect the environment and natural resources in the Arctic. Solution for the distribution of competences between the Federal Centre and regional and municipal entities (VNIIOkeangeologii, S.I. Ivanova).

Editor-in-Chief of the «Arctic and North», Lukin Yu.F.

April 12, 2016

Arkhangelsk

E-mail: lukin.yury@mail.ru

UDC 338+502.34

DOI: 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23.186



**4<sup>th</sup> meeting  
of the Arctic  
Expert Club  
(February 17, 2016)**



February 17, 2016: the fourth Arctic expert meeting took place. The theme was the Arctic tourism in Russia. It was done as a Skype conference: 40 participants from different parts of Russia, from Yakutia, Vladivostok, Murmansk, Arkhangelsk, Moscow and St. Petersburg. The purpose of presentations and discussions was not only a clarification of the theoretical and methodological studies of the Arctic tourism development, but also we intended to develop practical proposals and recommendations for tourism in the Russian Arctic.

N.K. Harlampeva, Candidate of Historical Sciences, Associate Professor at St. Petersburg State University, senior researcher of the AARI, has identified 5 levels of applied analysis of the tourism development in the Arctic: International, international Arctic, interregional, regional, inside the actors AZRF, each of which has its own competent authorities, from the International Maritime Organization to authorities of the Russian regions. Vodnoresursnyj integrated approach can address one of the priorities of the International Arctic regional cooperation to develop the foundations of environmental requirements on the ground.

According to Professor Y.F. Lukin, under Arctic tourism should understand national and international tourism in the Arctic, which is a promising sector of the economy as a whole.

Director of the Russian Center of the Arctic (Salekhard) V.A. Pushkarev spoke about on tourism development in Yamalo-Nenets Autonomous Okrug, noted that the planned installation of steles, signs that mark the extreme eastern point of Europe, cleanup of Island Belyi. Tourists can visit the camps, reindeers are in demand, but too expensive due to the need to rent for a few hours.

E.E. Plisetsky, Candidate of Geographical Sciences, Deputy Director of the Institute for Regional Studies and Urban Planning of the National Research Institution "Higher School of Economics", examined the complex political instruments at the federal and regional levels, strategic priorities the development of tourism. He noted that the Arctic region was difficult to access because of its importance to the national security of the country (border zone, military bases, major production). Significant are the problems of transport accessibility. Arctic tourist routes are still poorly advertised for foreigners. Minor amounts of funding for the development of tourism also limited

the development of the industry. According to E.E. Plisetsky, we require an increase in investment, a single body of tourism development, the unified law on tourism (modern law on tourist activity does not affect some important aspects).

According to a statement by T.V. Belevskih, Candidate of Economics, head of the tourist-information Center of the MAGE, in the Murmansk region there is a competition with neighbouring Finland and Norway that has a significant impact on the tourism in the region.

E.I. Golubeva, Professor, Faculty of geography, Moscow State University and her colleagues analyzed the problems and prospects of ecological tourism in the protected areas in the Russian Arctic. Not everyone understood the term "ecotourism". There were infrastructural and logistical problems of tourism development, training in this area that was the subject of discussion during the meeting of the Club.

Natural, recreational, historical and cultural potential of the Russian Arctic has been discussed in conversation with L.N. Drachkova, Candidate of Geographical Sciences, Associate Professor of geography and Hydrometeorology IENT NArFU. Use of the current capacity is fragmented and done spontaneously. At the same time, it does not bring tangible revenue to the state and entities and, in some cases, causing irreparable harm to the environment and objects of historical, cultural and natural heritage. Factors affecting tourism development: short duration favourable a "high" season; the presence of a long cold, rainy, snow period, wind, high humidity; personal security of tourists; the lack of provision of basic health services.

N.V. Miteneva, specialist of the Department of tourism development, Ministry of culture of the Arkhangelsk region, revealed the features of the development of marine tourism in Arctic, confirmed speakers' ideas on inadequate funding programs of development of the tourist industry. The industry requires more active involvement of business in the development of tourism. Tourist companies do not have a clear understanding of the Arctic tourism.

It was also announced that the forthcoming edition of Arctic entry tourism in Russia: an analytical review and reference materials. During the discussion, noted that training in universities for Arctic tourism activities at the level of a Bachelor degree is hardly justified from a position further employment of graduates. More affordable is to implement retraining programmes, professional development, teaching master's degree training orders entities and municipalities AZRF. It has been suggested that Arctic tourism is still an expensive niche product, not designed for the broad masses of tourists, has its limitations. At the same time, the potential for Arctic tourism in Russia is being used far more. After the meeting, we prepared the resolution.

*Resolution of the Arctic Expert Club 4th meeting "Arctic tourism in Russia"*

Ensuring the integrated development of the Russian Arctic should be sent to the responsible bodies in order to promote the tourist activities. This is one of the priorities of socio-economic activities resulting from both the high natural and cultural potential of the Russian Arctic and high multiplicative effect of the tourism industry. The key principles of strategic Arctic tourism development activities are coordinated, and the sequence of components, backed by the necessary regulatory and legal framework. Here are significant volumes and completeness of funding, application of models of public-private partnership in the development of tourist infrastructure, formation of research and methodological framework development potential of the territory, providing a choice of effective mechanisms for State, municipal, public and corporate governance.

Natural-recreational, historical and cultural potential of the Russian Arctic is currently not got proper evaluation, its use for the development of the tourist industry is fragmented, not generating revenue, and in some cases, causing irreparable damage to the environment, and objects of cultural and natural heritage. A number of Arctic regions of Russia have no clear, reasonable concept for Arctic tourism development. There is no comprehensive economic geographical assessment of natural, historical and cultural heritage of the Arctic as a basis of the tourist attraction reference model (attractiveness) territory, including score priodoëmnosti each of the SPNTs to careful use of tourism potential, opportunities and threats of impact areas. Many historical and cultural sites, including the historical development of the Arctic, in need of restoration, are subjected to extensive destruction, including wine amateur tourists. Notes the low Arctic tourist region as popularization for the domestic and social tourism, design and existing tourist routes among the Russian consumers, the high cost of tours. Existing and really "working" tourist routes mainly focused on Russian Arctic mainland. There is an acute shortage of professionals in the field of Arctic tourism. In this regard, it is essential to implement a number of practical measures aimed at the effective development of Arctic tourism.

1. Scientific-practical rationale goals and objectives of tourism development in the Arctic region and in northern Russia, the formation of methodical bases of training qualified personnel for the development of Arctic tourism, the development of conceptual frameworks implement tourism activities.

- a) Conceptual studies for the creation of a unified terminology of Arctic and Northern inter-related kinds of tourism, identify their particularities and range of application.
- b) Conducting physico-geographic, socio-economic and environmental studies for the creation of the necessary conditions for the development of Arctic and Northern types of tourism in Russia.

- c) Development and testing of methods of integrated expert assessment of the tourism potential of the northern territories, concrete, ready-to-implement, tourism products for the development of the Russian Arctic tourism.
- d) Conducting expert assessment of investment attractiveness of impact tourist areas on the basis of an analysis of the prospects of investment attractiveness and potential risks.
- e) Elaboration of the concept of regional innovation system on water AZRF with a view to consolidating efforts to establish a system of legal norms that govern social relations in the field of management, protection and restoration of water bodies in AZRF, create the model foundations safe tourism regions.
- f) Holding competitions for educational programs for training and retraining on tourist occupations for Arctic and Northern Russia.
- g) Development and implementation of evidence-based integrated tourism development projects in the Arctic region and in northern Russia by grants on a competitive basis.
- h) Formation of working groups within the framework of the International Arctic regional cooperation to create a concept of development of tourism in the Arctic using ecological, vodnoresursnogo, socio-cultural and other principles, adapted to the natural territorial, resource, social and ethno-cultural potential of regions.

## 2. Competitiveness of the Northern tourist product and reduce costs of marketing research.

- a) Subsidizing of tourist products in the Arctic, the far North taking into consideration cost Nordic udorožanij and transport costs, consisting of rendered tourist services.
- b) Subsidizing the costs of marketing research in the design and promotion of tourist product in the Arctic, in the far North.

## 3. Defining the role of Northern Territories Arctic tourism as a tool for development, including AZRF pazrabotku regulations on determining the status of the territories, non-AZRF, but the impact on the development of tourism.

- a) the distinction the concepts of land territories of conjugated AZRF territories of Northern Russia, promoting the development of tourism.
- b) the assessment of the level of socio-economic stability and security of territories that did not belong to the RUSSIAN Arctic, but conducive to its development taking into account the development potential of the Northern sea route.
- c) Formalize, codify the Arctic and the northern territories, the creation of individual programs of related development depending on their "involvement" to the Russian Arctic.

## 4. Developing rules, standards of insurance tourists in the Arctic and in the SMEs, including the formation of a special curriculum on life insurance and human health, in accordance with the approved tourist packages.

- a) Define a list of tourist packages, sold on the territory of the RUSSIAN Arctic, offshore the MSP with the selection of three segments (land, sea, mixed).
- b) Create the list of threats to human life and health in the Arctic, on the SMEs, definition of responsibilities of all structures of the obligation to comply with them.
- c) Formation of special mandatory programmes of life and health insurance of tourists taking into consideration that this type of insurance should not be extended to persons registered and living in AZRF on water area of the SMP and non-tourists.

d) The formation of the list of insurance cases for tourists in the Arctic, along the NSR and organizations capable of providing emergency medical services.

5. The development of theoretical and methodological framework for the development of ecological tourism, expansion of scientific and practical studies to assess the recreational capacity of the territories and waters of the Arctic and Northern Russia SPNT on reception of tourists.

- a) empowering the introduction of ecological tourism in the EPNTS AZRF.
- b) the creation of a unified terminology of ecological tourism.
- c) to develop a model for addressing emerging conflicts with recreational in nature conservation and traditional environment.
- d) SPNTs infrastructure development of the northern territories.
- e) Develop methods for estimates of recreational capacity of the territories and waters of protected areas in the Arctic and in northern Russia.
- f) Training in the field of ecological tourism for the needs of the Arctic and Northern Russia.
- g) Promotion of eco-tourism programmes taking into account the high vulnerability of Arctic ecosystems, protected areas.
- h) Formation of ecological tourism development programmes, taking into account the conservation of the heritage of indigenous peoples of the North and the possible involvement of the local population in socio-economic activities.
- l) organization of the system of supplementary education (training, retraining) in both full-time and part-time, distance learning for employees, tourism companies and the local population.

6. Improving the legal framework for the development of Arctic tourism.

- a) institutionalization of notions of Arctic and Northern tourism related to regional specifics types of tourist activities that occur during the implementation of their relations in the Arctic region and in northern Russia.
- b) elaboration, adoption of legislation aimed at regulating all types of relations between the Federal, regional and municipal authorities, participants in the tourist market, investors and consumers of tourism services, to meet the challenges of the State policy in the sphere of tourism development in the Arctic region and in northern Russia. The purpose of its use should be to ensure the development of regional tourist centres, legal formalization of relations between the State, on the one hand, and private business: investors, direct participants of turrynka, as well as consumers of services, on the other hand.
- c) improvement of implementation ) 172-FZ<sup>1</sup> in clarifying existing strategic planning document for the development of tourism in the Arctic, at federal, regional and municipal levels. In practice enforcement is important to enhancing the meaningfulness and vzaimuvâzannosti at all levels of the strategic management system with the priorities and objectives of the Arctic tourism development. Analysis of program-target instrument for implementing the priorities set out in the strategic documents of the regions AZRF indicates that they currently are not comprehensive in nature.

---

<sup>1</sup> Federalnyj zakon Rossijskoj Federacii ot 28 iyunya 2014 g. N 172-FZ «O strategicheskom planirovanii v Rossijskoj Federacii»

7. The creation of conditions for development of small and medium businesses in tourism in the subjects of AZRF, including the development and financing of the Federal, regional, municipal, targeted programmes for tourism development, as part of the diversification of Mono-towns of the far North.

- a) Stimulate the development of small businesses in tourism.
- b) Simplify allocation of land to small businesses in the tourism industry.
- c) Tax-free regime for small businesses in the tourism sector for a period of 3-5 years depending on the timing of implementation and payback of the developed projects.
- d) Permanent monitoring of new tourist products in the regions, posting and updating information about them on the website of the tourist information centre.
- (e) Reducing test burden on small and medium businesses in tourism by the regulatory authorities.
- f) Organizational and informational support in the development of new interregional tourism products under the Arctic tourism.

8. The marine tourism development based in the Murmansk and Arkhangelsk seaport marketing research consumers' tourproduct maritime cruise tourism, including development of its promotion.

- a) Develop regional projections products for marine tourism, its development strategies.
- b) Need to determine the sources of financing targeted programs of development of marine tourism at the Federal, regional and municipal levels, Division.
- c) Evaluation of opportunities and threats, testing, selection of products, routes and directions of marine tourism in the Arctic.
- d) Establishment of a single domestic tour operator at AZRF for the development of marine tourism.

Arctic Centre for strategic studies Lomonosov SAFU,  
Institute of regional studies and urban planning HSE  
Arkhangelsk — Moscow  
April 2016

## Summary

Авторы, аннотации, ключевые слова

Authors, abstracts, keywords

### ЭКОНОМИКА, ПОЛИТИКА, СОЦИУМ И КУЛЬТУРА ECONOMICS AND POLITICAL SCIENCE, SOCIETY AND CULTURE

**Журавель В.П.** Россия в Арктике. Будет ли Госкомиссия её рулевым?

**Valeriy P. Zhuravel** Russia in the Arctic. Will the State Commission be its helmsman?

**Аннотация.** Анализируются принятые решения по развитию и освоению Арктики. Раскрывается деятельность Государственной комиссии по вопросам развития Арктики. Отмечается медленное решение проблем энергетической, информационной, транспортной обеспеченности отдалённых населённых пунктов Российской Арктики. Вызывают беспокойство неурегулированность вопросов правового обеспечения системы гарантий и компенсаций для лиц, работающих на территории Севера в Арктике. Этот перечень существующих проблем можно продолжить. Деятельность Государственной комиссии подтверждает тезис о том, что Россия намерена надёжно и долгосрочно обеспечивать национальные интересы в Арктике.

**Ключевые слова:** Арктика, развитие, Государственная комиссия, проблемы

**Abstract.** The article is focused on the analysis of the decisions on the development and exploration of the Arctic. It also reveals the activity of the State Commission on the Development of the Arctic. It notes the slow solution of problems of energy, information, transportation security of the remote settlements in the Russian Arctic. Unresolved issues of legal support of the guarantee and compensation system caused a certain degree of concern for persons working on the territory of the North in the Arctic. This list of existing problems could be extended. Activities of the State Commission confirm the thesis that Russia intends to provide reliable and long-term national interests in the Arctic.

**Keywords:** Arctic, the development, the State Commission, the problems

**Коптяева А.А.** Международный имидж государства как инструмент мягкой силы

**Anna A. Koptyaeva** The international image of the state as an instrument of soft power

**Аннотация.** Международный имидж государства как инструмент мягкой силы раскрывается на примере России как одной из арктических стран. Проведен анализ основных аспектов международного имиджа России, выявляется совокупность причин и факторов, влияющих на восприятие образа России за рубежом. Представлена характеристика инструментов формирования международного имиджа России в мире.

**Ключевые слова:** Россия, международный имидж государства, Арктика, мягкая сила, образ России в мире

**Abstract.** The international image of the state as an instrument of soft power revealed on the example of Russia as one of the Arctic states. The analysis of the main aspects of the international image of Russia, a set of causes and factors that influence the perception of Russia abroad have been analyzed. The specific of the international image making of Russia is discussed.

**Keywords:** Russia, international image of the state, the Arctic, soft power, the image of Russia in the world

**Пегин Н.А.** Национальная арктическая транспортная линия: проблемы и перспективы

**Nikolay A. Pegin** National Arctic Transport Line: problems and prospects

**Аннотация.** Дается обоснование проекта создания Национальной арктической транспортной линии Мурманск-Петропавловск-Камчатский, анализируются её проблемы и перспективы.

**Abstract.** The article represents a rationale for the project of the National Arctic Transport Line Murmansk-Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky and its problems and prospects

**Ключевые слова:** Национальная арктическая транспортная линия, Петропавловск-Камчатский, Мурманск, порт-хаб, Северный морской путь, Арктика

**Keywords:** National Arctic Transport Line, Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky, Murmansk, a port hub, the Arctic, the NSR

**Плисецкий Е.Е.** Какие проблемы представители местной власти и жители посёлка Берёзово Ханты-Мансийского автономного округа — Югры считают самыми главными

**Evgeny E. Plisetsky** What problems do people of the Berezovo village of the Khanty-Mansiisk Autonomous District — Yugra consider the major

**Аннотация.** Главной целью экспедиции в посёлок Берёзово Берёзовского района Ханты-Мансийского автономного округа — Югра, состоявшейся с 6 по 8 июня 2015 года, ставшей частью большого исследования «Governance, Community and Ecology: Responding to Challenges of Resource Development in the Circumpolar North», стало изучение современных тенденций и перспектив устойчивого развития отдельных приарктических территорий для обеспечения сбалансированного экономического развития, сохранения уникальной природной экологической системы и уклада коренных малочисленных народов Севера и сложившейся системы регионального и муниципального управления этими процессами. Экспедиция состоялась при поддержке и при участии Администрации ХМАО — Югры и Берёзовского района

**Ключевые слова:** устойчивое развитие, арктические экосистемы, муниципальное управление, экономическое развитие, поселения Арктики

**Abstract.** The expedition to the village of Berezovo of the Berezovsky district of the Khanty-Mansiisk Autonomous District — Yugra, held on 6—8 of June 2015, became part of a large research project “Governance, Community and Ecology: Responding to Challenges of Resource Development in the Circumpolar North”. Its purpose was to study current trends and prospects for sustainable development of certain Arctic areas to ensure balanced economic development, preserve the unique natural ecological system, way of life of indigenous peoples and the existing system of regional and municipal management of these processes. The expedition took place with the support and involvement of the Administration of the Khanty-Mansiisk — Ugra and Berezovsky area.

**Keywords:** sustainable development, Arctic ecosystems, municipal management, economic development, Arctic settlements

**Цветков А.Ю.** Миссия в стратегическом управлении территорией (на примере Соловецкого архипелага)

**Alexander Y. Tsvetkov** Mission in the strategic territory management (on the example of the Solovetsky Archipelago)

**Аннотация.** В данной статье изучены основные аспекты разработки миссии территории в контексте стратегического управления территорией. Показана роль и значение миссии в управлении территорией, отражены основные проблемы и принципы её формирования. На примере территории Соловецкого архипелага проведён анализ миссии, предложены рекомендации по её совершенствованию, представлена модель разработки миссии Соловецкого архипелага.

**Ключевые слова:** миссия территории, стратегическое управление, разработка миссии, маркетинг территорий, Соловецкий архипелаг.

**Abstract.** The article is devoted to the main aspects of the territory mission development in the context of strategic management of the territory. The paper shows the role and importance of the mission in the management of the territory and reflects the main issues and the principles of its formation. Using the example of the Solovetsky Archipelago the author analyzes the mission, gives recommendations for its improvement and provides the model of the Solovetsky archipelago mission development.

**Keywords:** territory mission, strategic management, development of the mission, territory marketing, Solovetsky Archipelago.

## АРКТИЧЕСКИЙ ТУРИЗМ В РОССИИ ARCTIC TOURISM IN RUSSIA

**Бызова Н.М.** Природный туристский потенциал островов западного сектора Российской Арктики  
**Natalia M. Byzova** The natural tourist potential of the islands in the western sector of the Russian Arctic

**Аннотация.** Острова архипелага Земля Франца-Иосифа и Новой Земли западного сектора Российской Арктики весьма перспективны для организации морских арктических круизов. Они отличаются уникальными природными ландшафтами, разнообразием флоры и фауны. В Арктике сосредоточена половина видов береговых птиц мира. Летом на Новой Земле гнездятся казарки чёрная и белощёкая, изредка встречаются лебедь тундровый, гусь белолобый, гаги и гагары. На архипелаге встречаются сферолиты — одно из загадочных образований Арктики, представляют собой идеально круглые каменные шары от нескольких сантиметров до нескольких метров в диаметре.

**Ключевые слова:** туризм, Земля Франца-Иосифа, Новая Земля, природные ландшафты, флора, фауна

**Abstract.** The islands of the archipelago of Franz Josef Land and Novaya Zemlya of the western sector of the Russian Arctic are very promising for the organization of the Arctic sea cruises. They have the unique natural landscapes and diverse flora and fauna. The Arctic holds half of the species of shore birds in the world. In summer, the Novaya Zemlya is full of *Branta leucopsis* and *Branta bernicla* and occasionally there are tundra swans, white-fronted goose, eider ducks and loons. The archipelago has spherulites — one of the mysterious formations in the Arctic, they are perfectly round stone balls from a few centimeters to several meters in diameter.

**Keywords:** tourism, Franz Josef Land, Novaya Zemlya, landscapes, flora, fauna

**Голубева Е. И., Тульская Н. И., Цекина М.В., Кирашева Н. И.** Экологический туризм на ООПТ в Российской Арктике: перспективы и проблемы

**Elena I. Golubeva, Nadezhda I. Tulskeya, Maria V. Tsekina, Natalia I. Kirasheva** Ecological tourism in protected natural areas of the Russian Arctic: prospects and challenges

**Аннотация.** В статье рассматриваются проблемы и перспективы развития экологического туризма на особо охраняемых природных территориях (ООПТ) в Российской Арктике. Предлагается создание единой терминологической базы для понятия «экологический туризм». Проанализированы системные проблемы, тормозящие развития экологического туризма на ООПТ в Арктическом регионе. Показаны возникающие конфликты рекреационного, с одной стороны, с природоохранным и традиционным природопользованием, с другой стороны на ООПТ Арктики. Выделены перспективные аспекты развития экологического туризма, как пути сохранения наследия коренных народов Севера, возможности вовлечение местного населения в экономическую деятельность и экологического образования.

**Ключевые слова:** экологический туризм, особо охраняемые природные территории, Арктика, рекреационная ёмкость, рекреационное, природоохранное, традиционное природопользование, природное и культурное наследие, геогра-

**Abstract.** The article focuses on the problems and prospects of the ecological tourism in the natural protected areas (NPA) in the Russian Arctic. It is proposed to create a unified terminological basis for the concept of “ecotourism”. We analyzed the systemic problems that hinder the development of ecotourism in the NPA of the Arctic region. The article shows arising recreational conflicts, caused by environmental and traditional land use issues and the existence of NPA in the Arctic. We also discuss promising aspects of the ecological tourism, preservation of the heritage of indigenous peoples of the North and opportunities for involving local people in economic activities and environmental education.

**Keywords:** Ecotourism, protected territories, the Arctic, recreational capacity, recreational, environmental, traditional land use, natural and cultural heritage, geographical factors

*фические факторы.*

**Кузнецов В.С.** Комплексный подход к развитию туризма на особо охраняемых природных территориях

**Victor S. Kuznetsov** An integrated approach to tourism development in protected natural areas

**Аннотация.** В статье представлена оценка состояния туристской деятельности с точки зрения развивающегося сектора экономики, как результат повышенного интереса людей к отдыху и путешествиям на современном этапе. Основное внимание уделено развивающейся форме экологического туризма на природоохранных территориях. Предложен проект Концепции развития туризма на территории национального парка «Русская Арктика» и государственного природного заказника федерального значения «Земля Франца-Иосифа», как один из подходов к перспективной деятельности парка.

**Ключевые слова:** Арктика, туристская деятельность, туристские ресурсы, туристский продукт, экологический туризм, особо охраняемые природные территории, природное и культурное наследие, перспективы развития.

**Abstract.** The article presents the assessment of tourist activity in terms of development of economy and a result of increased interest of people to rest and travel in the Arctic. Development of the ecotourism in the protected areas is in focus of the article. A draft concept of tourism development in the National park "Russian Arctic" and the state nature reserve of federal importance "Franz Josef Land" are discussed in the context of the most promising approaches to their development.

**Keywords:** Arctic, tourist activity, tourist resources, tourist product, ecotourism, protected areas, natural and cultural heritage, development prospects.

**Лукин Ю.Ф.** Арктический туризм: рейтинг регионов, возможности и угрозы

**Yury F. Lukin** Arctic tourism: the rating of regions, the opportunities and threats

**Аннотация.** Арктический и северный туризм, как операциональные определения, используются в научных публикациях ещё достаточно редко и нерегулярно. На практике туризм становится неотъемлемым сектором экономики, имеет мультипликативный эффект для развития социальной сферы, инфраструктуры, других отраслей. На основе данных первого Национального туристского рейтинга 85 субъектов РФ (2015), впервые составлен рейтинг привлекательности регионов Российской Арктики, анализируются возможности туризма и угрозы.

**Ключевые слова:** арктический и северный туризм, рейтинг, регионы, мультипликативный эффект, возможности, угрозы

**Abstract.** Arctic and northern tourism as operational definitions are used in scientific publications more infrequently and irregularly. In practice, the tourism has become an inalienable sector of the economy; it has a multiplying effect for the development of social services, infrastructure and other sectors. The first National Tourist Rating of the 85 subjects of the Russian Federation (2015), the first rating of tourist attractiveness of the regions of the Russian Arctic contributes to the analyzes of the opportunities to tourism and threats.

**Keywords:** Arctic tourism, rating, regions, Russian Arctic, maps, multiplying effect

**Харлампова Н.К.** Теоретико-методологическое обоснование развития туризма в Арктике

**Nadezhda K. Kharlampieva** Theory and methodology of the Arctic tourism development

**Аннотация.** Для изучения идей развития туризма в Арктике автор предлагает: пять уровней прикладного научного исследования по изучению перспектив развития российского арктического туризма, создание региональной инновационной системы водных ресурсов в Арктической зоне Российской Федерации, а также туристско-рекреационной системы в качестве создания модели

**Abstract.** In order to study the ideas of development of the Arctic tourism the author offers: five levels of applied scientific research on studying the prospects of the Russian Arctic tourism, creation of regional innovative system of water resources in the Arctic zone of the Russian Federation, and also tourist recreational system in the Arctic as a model of the safe tourism in the Arctic.

безопасного туризма в Арктике.

**Ключевые слова:** Арктика, регионы, туризм, инновационная система, рекреационный комплекс, модель безопасного туризма, методология исследования, водно-экологический принцип

**Keywords:** Arctic, regions, tourism, innovation system, tourist recreational complex, model of the safe tourism, methodology of research, the water and ecological principle

## СОХРАНЕНИЕ КУЛЬТУРНОЙ И ПРИРОДНОЙ СРЕДЫ АРКТИКИ PROTECTING CULTURAL AND NATURAL ENVIRONMENT OF THE ARCTIC

**Обоимов А.П.** Заветная мечта Фёдора Конюхова

**Alexander P. Oboimov** Fedor Konyukhov's dream

**Аннотация.** Рассказывается о встрече на побережье Белого моря, в Летней Золотице с известным путешественником Ф.Ф. Конюховым, предки которого были русскими поморами. Публикуются фото.

**Ключевые слова:** Федор Конюхов, Виктор Симонов, Летняя Золотица, встречи, поклонный крест

**Abstract.** The article is about the meeting with the famous traveler F.F. Konyukhov, whose ancestors were Russian Pomors, in the White Sea coast, in the place called Letnyaya Zolotitsa. Photos of the meeting are published.

**Keywords:** Fedor Konyukhov, Viktor Simonov, Letnyaya Zolotitsa, meeting, cross

## ОБЗОРЫ. REVIEWS

**Зайков К.С., Калинина М.Р., Тамицкий А.М., Сабуров А.А., Шепелев Е.А.** Научно-образовательное пространство Арктики: Норвегия

**Konstantin S. Zaikov, Marina R. Kalinina, Aleksander M. Tamitskiy, Aleksander A. Saburov, Evgeny A. Shepelev** Scientific and educational space of the Arctic: Norway

**Аннотация.** В аналитическом обзоре показан научно-образовательный потенциал территорий Норвегии, входящих в циркумполярный регион (Шпицберген, Финнмарк, Тромс, Нурланн), рассмотрена норвежская политика в сфере науки и инноваций. Отдельно охарактеризованы научные интересы Норвегии в Арктике.

**Ключевые слова:** Норвегия, Шпицберген, Свальбард, Финнмарк, Тромс, Нурланн, Арктика, наука, инновации, университет, научно-образовательная политика

**Abstract.** The analytical overview represents the scientific and educational potential of the Norwegian territories of the Circumpolar Region (Svalbard, Finnmark, Troms and Nordland), Norway's science and innovation policy and scientific interests in the Arctic.

**Keywords:** Norway, Spitsbergen, Svalbard, Finnmark, Troms, Nordland, Arctic, science, innovations, university, scientific and educational policy

**Лукин Ю.Ф.** Российская Арктика или Арктическая зона

**Yury F. Lukin** Russian Arctic or the Arctic zone

**Аннотация.** Анализ результатов зондажа по теме «Российская Арктика или Арктическая зона»

**Ключевые слова:** Российская Арктика, Арктическая зона, Крайний Север России

**Abstract.** Analysis of data collection results on the topic "Russian Arctic or the Arctic zone"

**Keywords:** Russian Arctic, the Arctic zone, the Far North of Russia

**4-е заседание** Арктического экспертного клуба САФУ им.М.В. Ломоносова

**4<sup>th</sup> meeting** of the Arctic Expert Club of NArFU named after M.V. Lomonosov

**Редакционный совет журнала «Арктика и Север»****Editorial Board of "Arctic and North" journal**

1. Alfred Colpaert, PhD in Geography, Professor in Physical Geography and Geoinformatics at the Department of Geographical and Historical Studies of the University of Eastern Finland
2. Arild Moe, Cand. of Political Sciences, Senior research fellow, Fridjof Nansen Institute
3. Jens Petter Nielsen, PhD in History, Professor at the Department of History and Religious Studies, UiT — The Arctic University of Norway
4. Jukka Nyysönen, Doctor Artium, Post-doctoral fellow, Department of Cultural Studies, UiT — The Arctic University of Norway
5. Lassi Heininen, PhD in Social Sciences, Professor in Arctic politics at the Department of Social Science, University of Lapland
6. Maria Lähteenmäki, Doctor of Philosophy, Professor of Arctic Region and Finnish history, University of Eastern Finland, Adjunct Professor at the University of Helsinki
7. Natalia Loukachev, PhD in Juridical Sciences, Associate Professor, Canada Research Chair in Aboriginal Governance and Law, Department of Political Science, University of British Columbia, Prince George, Canada
8. Øyvind Ravna, PhD in Law, Professor of Law, UiT — The Arctic University of Norway
9. Paul Josephson, PhD in Political Science, Professor at the Department of History, Colby College, the USA
10. Dregalo Alexander Alexeevich, Doctor of Philosophical Sciences, Professor of the Department of the State and Municipal government, NArFU named after M.V. Lomonosov (Arkhangelsk). Honored Worker of Higher Professional Education of Russia
11. Zaikov Konstantin Sergeevich, Candidate of Historical Sciences, Director of the Arctic Centre for Strategic Studies, NArFU named after M.V. Lomonosov (Arkhangelsk)
12. Kefeli Igor Fedorovich, Doctor of Philosophical Sciences, Professor, Head of the Department of Culture and Global studies, Baltic State Technical University "Voenmech" named after D.F. Ustinov, Chief editor of "Geopolitics and Security" journal. Honored Worker of Higher Education of the Russian Federation (St. Petersburg)
13. Kotlyakov Vladimir Mikhailovich, Doctor of Geographical Science, Professor, Academician of the Russian Academy of Sciences, Institute of Geography. Honorary president of the Russian Geographical Society (Moscow)
14. Lukin Yury Fedorovich, Doctor of Historical Science, Professor, Editor in chief of "Arctic and North" journal (Arkhangelsk). Honored Worker of Higher Education of the Russian Federation

15. Neyelov Yury Vasilevich, Doctor of Technical Sciences, Professor Emeritus of the Tyumen State Oil and Gas University. Laureate of the Government of the Russian Federation award in the field of science and technology. Member of the Federation Council of the Federal Assembly of the Russian Federation (Moscow)
16. Selin Vladimir Stepanovich, Doctor of Economics, Professor, Head of the department of economic policy and economic activities, the Arctic Institute of Economic Problems named after G.P. Luzin of KSC RAS (Apatity). Honored Economist of the Russian Federation
17. Sokolova Flera Harisovna, Doctor of Historical Sciences, Professor, Head of the Department of Regional and International relations, NArFU named after M.V. Lomonosov. Honorary Worker of Higher Professional Education of Russia (Arkhangelsk)
18. Toskunina Vera Eduardovna, Doctor of Economics, Professor, Assistant of the Vice President for Research, NArFU named after M.V. Lomonosov
19. Ulyanovsky Viktor Ivanovich, Doctor of Social Sciences, Professor of the Department of the State and Municipal government, NArFU named after M.V. Lomonosov. Honored Worker of Higher Professional Education of Russia (Arkhangelsk)
20. Fedorov Pavel Viktorovich, Doctor of Historical Sciences, Professor, Chief researcher at the Presidential Library named after Boris Yeltsin (St. Petersburg)
21. Harlampeva Vera Klimovna, Candidate of Historical Sciences, Associate Professor, Department of World Politics, St. Petersburg State University (St. Petersburg)

Approved at the meeting  
Of the "Arctic and North" Editorial Office  
on the 12<sup>th</sup> of October 2015

**Выходные данные / Output data****АРКТИКА и СЕВЕР**

DOI 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23

Главный редактор — Лукин Юрий Фёдорович. E-mail: lukin.yury@mail.ru

Редактор — Шепелев Евгений Александрович. E-mail: e.shepelev@narfu.ru

Художественный редактор (английская версия) — Котлова Екатерина Сергеевна.

E-mail: e.kotlova@narfu.ru

Размещение на сайте — Шепелев Евгений Александрович

Свидетельство о регистрации — Эл № ФС77-42809 от 26 ноября 2010 года

Учредитель — ФГАОУ ВПО «Северный (Арктический) федеральный университет имени М. В. Ломоносова»

Адрес учредителя: Россия, 163002, г. Архангельск, наб. Северной Двины, д. 17

Адрес для писем и иной корреспонденции: Россия, 163002, г. Архангельск, наб. Северной Двины, д. 17, редакция журнала «Арктика и Север»

Электронный адрес редакции: arcticandnorth@yandex.ru

Подписано «в печать» для размещения на сайте: <http://narfu.ru/aan> — 10.06.2016

**ARCTIC and NORTH**

DOI 10.17238/issn2221-2698.2016.23

Editor-in-chief — Lukin Y. F. E-mail: lukin.yury@mail.ru

Editor — Shepelev E. A. E-mail: e.shepelev@narfu.ru

Art editor (English version) — Kotlova E.S. E-mail: e.kotlova@narfu.ru

Placement on the webpage by E.A. Shepelev

Registration certificate EI № FS77-42809 from November 26, 2010

Founder — Northern (Arctic) Federal University named after M. V. Lomonosov

Address of the founder: 17, Northern Dvina Embankment, Arkhangelsk, Russia, 163002

Address for letters and other correspondence: to Y.F. Lukin, “Arctic and North” journal, 17, Northern Dvina Embankment, Arkhangelsk, Russia, 163002

E-mail address of the editorial office: arcticandnorth@yandex.ru

Signed for placement on the webpage: <http://narfu.ru/aan> on June 10, 2016